KOMBA   GRAMMAR   SKETCH

Neville Southwell
1979

TABLE OF CONTENTS

ORIENTATION

The Komba Language is spoken by approximately
twelve thousand whose home area is the south eastern
division of the Kabwum District, Morobe Province ,
Papua New Guinea. The Komba Language belongs to the
Western Huon Family.

The phonemes of Komba are p,t,k, b,d,g, kw,gw,
m,n,ŋ,w,y,l,s,z,a,â,e,i,o,u, The voiceless stops are
aspirated utterance initially. The voiced stops have
fricative variants or in the case of d a flapped variant
r. These variants occur between vowels. The variant r
is symbolized in the orthography as r rather than d .
ŋ symbolizes the velar nasal which is symbolized in
English as ng. The mid central vowel symbolized as â
has two phonetic variants , the mid central unrounded
and the corresponding mid central rounded. gw and
kw symbolize voiced and voiceless labialized
stops respectively .

PREFACE

This paper is a tagmemic sketch of the grammar of the Komba Language. The grammatical levels are presented in ascending order from the Root up through the Discourse.

While taking responsibility fot the analysis and presentation, the author gratefully acknowledges the help of the following;

Dr. Kenneth McElhanon, analyst of the neighbouring Selepet language for his advice and helpful comments on earlier papers covering various levels.

Dr. Phyllis Healey and Dr. Charles Peck for help in analysis given at several Summer Institute of Linguistics grammar workshops held at Ukarumpa , Papua New Guinea.

The reader may find it of interest to compare the Selepet Grammar part 1 (McElhanon 1972) for similarities and differences in a neighbouring language.

List of Symbols and Abbreviations used in this paper.

acc.	accompaniment
achiev.	achievement
act.	action
ad.	adequate
Adj.	adjective
alt.	alternative
antith.	antithesis
app.	apposition
ARP	Axis Relator Phrase
attrib.	attributive
aux.	auxilliary
ben.	benefactive
BU.	Build Up
Cl.	Clause
Clos.	Closure
Comp.	completed
con.	contrary
conc.	conclusion
condit.	condition
cont.	contrast
coord.	coordinate
cpsn.	comparison
ctd.	continued
cust.	customary
dec.	declarative
dep.	dependent
du.	dual
end.	endeavour
etc.	etcetera
expo.	exposition
fut.	future
H.	head

hetero.	heteropersonal
homo.	homopersonal
imm.	immediate
imp	imperative
inad.	inadequate
inc.	include
indep.	independent
Inst.	instrument
intrans.	intransitive
intro.	introduction
I.Obj.	indirect object
lim.	limiter
loc.	locative/location
mod.	modified
mot.	motion
neg.	negative
Nn.	noun
Obj.	object
P.	Paragraph
Permiss.	permission
Ph.	phrase
pl.	plural
poss.	possession/possessive
Pred.	Predicate
pres.	present
prn.	pronoun
qual.	qualified
ref.	reference/referent
reinfo.	reinforce
rem.	remote
res.	result

sing.	singular
sp.	speech
spec.	specification
st.	stem
subj.	subject
syll.	syllable
St.	stem
Subj.	subject
Syll.	syllable
trans.	transitive
unsucc.	unsuccessful
Vb.	verb
Ø	no indicator/zero

GENERAL MORPHOPHONEMICS

The unvoiced stops, p,t,k, in final positions become voiced when non final,ie when a vowel initial enclitic is added.

nep   neb - ân
work   work - loc
                             'at work'

kât   kâr - ân
stone   stone-loc
                             'on the stone'

kek   keg   - âk
quickly   quickly- lim
                             only quickly

The complex morpho phonemics applied when verbs stems and suffixes come together are covered at a later stage in this paper.

THE ROOT

1   Introduction

The Root is the lowest level of the Komba Grammar. Roots being the smallest grammatical units.

In classifying the roots of Komba on the basis of their distribution we run into difficulty as many roots have a wide and varied range of distribution in nuclear position in different word classes.

For example.	a	(Adj.)	'male'
	a	(Nn.)	'man'
	kulem	(Nm.)	'marking'
	kulemgu-	(Vb.)	'to write'
	mândâ-	(Vb.)	'to hang up'
	mândâmândâ	(Nn.)	'house rafter'

Due to the fact that the patterns of distribution of the roots are very variable we have chosen to take the view that word classes overlap, so that the one root may share membership with more than one class. Thus the root ŋâi may be classified as an adjective when manifesting the qualifier tagmeme and meaning 'a/another'. But when manifesting the pronoun slot it may be classified as an interrogative pronoun, 'who'. Occuring in the intensifier tagmeme of an adjective phrase it would be classified as an intensifier 'very'. Thus we have;

A   ŋâi   me   -   m   ar   -   ip
Man a/another   take it   -   homo.   go   -   he did

'A man took it and went.'

Dâi   -   ŋâ   gig   - ap?
Who   -   subj.   give you -he has

'Who has given it to you?'

bâu   patâ   ŋâi
pig   big   very

'very big pig'

A number of roots never occur as free forms but only occur in compounds as derived (modified) forms or in the nuclei of particular word classae. For example the form bâli occurs in compounds such as umbâlâ (Nn.) 'sadness', bâliŋâ (Adj.) 'bad', and with verb suffixation bâli- 'to be bad/ out of order.'

CLASSIFICATION OF ROOTS

1.1 Adjectives

Adjective roots may be divided into sub classes on the basis of meaning. In the phrase, Adjectives follow the noun they qualify. Generally only one Adjective occurs in a string although two may occur. (See Qualified Nn. Ph.)

1. Colour Adjectives are a closed sub class which incluse the colours, patterns and textures used when describing such things as skin, hair and feathers. Some of the members are;

k&au	-	'grey'
sumun		'dark'
qimbaŋ&a	-	'yellow/orange'
kambum	.	'purple'
tiriŋmiriŋ		'mottled'
gw&alâgw&alâ		'green/blue'
kuriŋ&a		'red'
k&auk&au		'white'
zera		'specked/scaly'
ŋâbâsu		'slimy'

2. Gender Adjectives are;

a	'male'
amb&an	'female'

3. Age Adjectives include;

uṇakṇâ	'new'
saṇqiṇâ	'previous/old'
tâmbâṇâ	'long lasting'
siqan	'youthful'
somba	'aged/senile'

4. Quality Adjectives include;

bâliṇâ	'bad'
âlipṇâ	'good/well'
salek	'clean'
hulim	'wild'
kâtik	'tough/strong'
lotṇâ	'soft/weak'
kusik	'good'
kolotok	'sliffery' (wet)
târârak	'straight'
qâṇqoṇâ	'crooked'
tâṇtâṇ	'straight'
asilik	'slippery' (dry)

5. Size Adjectives include;

patâ	'large'
mâik	'small'
paṇâ	'medium/mid'
kârep	'long/tall/distant'
pâṇkânok	'short/near'

6.   Weight Adjectives include;

<u>yâmbâtŋâ</u>	'heavy'
<u>bâbâlaŋ</u>	'light'
<u>abamdâ</u>	'light'

7.   Quantitive Adjectives include;

<u>doŋbep</u>	'many'
<u>aksik</u>	'all'
<u>kâmut</u>	'heap'
<u>nâmbutŋâ</u>	'some/others'
<u>bituk</u>	'few'
<u>pisuk</u>	'all'

1.2   Adverbs.

Adverb roots occur in the Modifier Tagmeme of the Modified Verb Phrase. They modify the manner of the action of the verb. The class includes;

kek	'quickly'
mulun	'slowly/carefully'
dân	'thoroughly'
laŋ	'regardless/heedlessly'
tok	'still/yet'
tik	'secretly/stealthily'

Adverbs may be intensified by the addition of the limiter enclitic -âk or the locative enclitic -ân to form an Axis Relator Phrase.

tiŋ	-	âk
stealthily-		only

'with all stealth'

laŋ	-	ân
regardless	-	loc.

'in disregard'

1.3 Comparison Roots

Comparison Roots is a closed class of roots which has only two members. <u>itâ</u> 'like this' and <u>Yatâ</u> 'like that'. The comparison roots are used in comparing or stating similarity. Comparison roots fill the relator tagmeme of the Comparison Axis Relator phrase. For example;

<u>dap</u>   <u>yatâ</u>

what   like that

'how'

<u>zâk</u>   <u>yatâ</u>   <u>sâ   - ip</u>

he   like that say   -ᵢ he did

'he spoke like that'

<u>itâ</u>   <u>u   - pi</u>

like this you/they - will do

'You/they will do like this.'

The comparison roots can take the specifier enclitic -<u>ik</u> or the compound enclitic -<u>igâk</u> whose components are the specifier morpheme -<u>ik</u> and the limiter morpheme -<u>âk</u>. The locative enclitic form -<u>ingen</u> may also occur with the comparison roots to form an Axis Relator Phrase.

zo yat   - ik

that like that - specifically

'Specifically that' (that is it)

it   - ik   o - t

like this - specifically   do - you

'Do it exactly like this.'

zo yat   - iq   - âk

that like that - specifically - lim.

'Just like that.'

zâk yat   - ingen muyaqe - ip

he/it like that - loc. appeared - he did

'He appeared just like that.'

1.4 Noun Roots

Noun roots are divided up into three separate
subclasses on the basis of their cooccurence re-
strictions with certain enclitics.

1. Subclass one is made up mainly of kinship terms
and body parts. Members of this subclass are identifiable
by the fact that on the phrase level they regularly
take enclitics indicating number and possessor.
Number indicators are;

-ǿ-   Singular

-zat-   Dual

-râp-   Plural

Possessor indicators are;

-nâ	'my'	niknâ	'our' (du.)	-ninâ	'our' (pl)
-ǥâ/-kâ	'your'	ziknâ	'your'(du.)	-ziŋâ	'your'(pl)
-ŋâ	'his/her/its'	ziknâ	'their'(du.)	-ziŋâ	'their'(pl)

âtâ   -   nâ

elder brother-   my

'my elder brother'

âtâ   - zat   -   nâ

older brother - du.   -   my

'my two older brothers'

âtâ   -râp   -   nâ

older brother -pl.   -   my

` my   older   brothers '

2.   Subclass two covers the majority of noun roots.
They optionally take enclitics indicating their
possessor but they do not take enclitics indicating
number.

<u>hân   -   niŋâ</u>

land -   our

'our land'

<u>namâ   -   ziŋâ</u>

house - their

'their house'

<u>nak - ŋâ</u>

tree - his

'his tree'

<u>nep   -   kâ</u>

work -   your

'your work'

3.   Subclass three includes noun roots which do not take enclitics indicating a possessor. They occur as free forms on the phrase and clause level.

<u>pibâ</u>

'wind'

<u>map</u>

'rain'

<u>seloŋ</u>

'rat'

<u>zuu</u>

'bush animal'

Numeral roots

Numeral roots include the basic numbers one to five. Higher numbers are generally phrases or higher level constructions built with the aid of the basic numbers. Numerals occur in the second qualifer tagmeme of the Qualified Noun Phrase.

The numerals are

kânok	'one'
zaqât	'two'
karâmbut	'three'
kimembut	'four'
mâmim	'five' (thumb)

To this list it is best to add the two forms

bâtnâmbut	'five' and
bâzaqât	'ten'

The obvious origins of these two are respectively the phrases bet nâmbut 'hand that side' and bet zaqât 'two hands', but they have each through constant usage been modified into a single functioning numeral unit.

The numbers 6 through 9 are formed by preceeding the basic numerals with nâmbur   – an

other side– loc

'on the other side'

The numbers 11 through 16 are formed by preceding the
basic numerals with <u>kiin</u>   from <u>ken</u> 'foot'

The numbers 16 through 19 are formed by preceding the
basic numerals with <u>kiin</u>   <u>nâmbur</u>   —   an

                              foot   other side — loc.

                              'on the other foot'

The number twenty is a qualified noun phrase

<u>a</u> <u>kânok</u>

man one

'twenty' (one mans fingers and toes)

<u>nâmbur</u>   —   an   <u>zaqât</u>

other side — loc.   two

'seven'

<u>kiin</u>   <u>zaqât</u>

foot   two

'twelve'

<u>kiin</u> <u>nâmbur</u>   —   an   <u>zaqât</u>

foot   other side   — loc.   two

seventeen'

<u>a</u>   <u>zaqât</u>

man   two

'forty'

1.6   Pronoun Roots

1.6.1   Demonstrative Pronouns

The regular demonstrative pronouns are a small closed class which have the function of specifying or identifying, and/or indicating position or direction relative to the speaker.

The five members of this class are;

zirâ	'this/these'	abbreviated forms;	zi 'this/these'
zorâ	'that/those'		zo 'that/those'
urâ	'that up there'		u 'that up there'
âmbi	'that down there'		
ândi	'that over there'		

The regular demonstrative pronoun roots take the following enclitics to form Axis·Relator Phrases.

Locative enclitic -en

zir   -   en
this   -   loc.
'here'

âmbir   -   en
that down then-loc.
'down there'

Subject enclitic -ŋâ

<u>zirâ</u>   - <u>ŋâ</u>

this   - subj.

'this one'

<u>zorâ</u> - <u>ŋâ</u>

that   - subj.

'that one'

Reference enclitic -<u>at</u>

<u>ândir</u>   - <u>at</u>

that over there - ref.

'concerning that over there'

<u>zor</u>   - <u>at</u>

that   - ref.

'concerning that,' (therefore)

Specifier enclitic -<u>ik</u>

<u>ur</u>   - <u>ik</u>.

that up there- specifically

'that one up there'

<u>zir</u>   - <u>ik</u>

this   - specifically

'this one specifically'

Origin enclitic -bâ

zo - bâ

that - from

'from there'

âmbi - bâ

that down there - from

'from down there'

Compound enclitics also occur with the demonstrative pronouns. These compound enclitics are built from the basic enclitic forms.

Limited locative enclitc -enâk (-en + -âk)

zor - en - âk

that - loc.- lim.

'only there'

ur - en - âk

that up there - loc. - lim.

'only up there'

Limited Subject enclitic - ŋak (-ŋâ + âk)

zorâ - ŋa - k

that - subj- lim.

'only that one'

As well as such distribution in Axis Relator Phrases, Demonstrative Pronouns fill other tagmemes such as the second qualifier tagmeme of the Qualified Noun Phrase.

bâu patâ   zo
pig large   that
'that big pig'

ambân   karâmbut   zi
women   three   these
'these three women'

Demonstrative pronouns also substitute for nouns in clause and Sentence Level tagmemes.

Location Tagmeme

zi   ga
this come you
'You come here.'

Object Tagmeme

zo   me   - m âi - bi
that take - homo. go- you will
'Take that and go.'

1.6.2 Interrogative Pronouns

The Interrogative Pronouns are a small closed class which take a different range of enclitics and have differing distribution to the demonstrative pronouns.

<u>ŋâi</u> - who/whom

<u>wan</u> - what thing

<u>dap</u> - what

The Interrogative Pronouns take the following enclitics forming Axis Relator Phrases.

Locative enclitics <u>-ân/-ângen/-in</u>

<u>wan   -   ân</u>

what - loc .

'at what' (where)

<u>dab   -   ângen</u>

what - loc·

'in what way' (how)

<u>ŋâi - n</u>

who - loc·

'at another'

Subject enclitic -<u>ŋâ</u>

<u>wan - ŋâ</u>

what - subj.

'what'

ŋâi - ŋâ

who - subj.

'who'

Benefactive - Possessive enclitic -ɡât

wan - ɡât

what - ben.

'why' (for what)

ŋâi - ɡât

who - ben.

'whose' (for whom)

The Compound Possessed-locative enclitic -ɡâren

(-ɡât + en) also occurs.

ŋâi - ɡâr - en

who - ben. - loc.

'at whose' (to whom)

Interogative Pronouns also fill the Object and Indirect
Object tagmemes on the clause level.

wan pindâ - ban

What give him - you will

'What will you give him?'

ŋâi   duku   -   we

who   tell him-   you did

'Whom did you tell?'

dap   s   -   at   (sâ-at → s-at)

what   say   - you have

'What have you said?'

1.6.3 Personal Pronoun Roots.

Regular Personal Pronoun roots indicate seven distinctions of person and number. That is first, second and third singular, first and second/third dual, and first and second/third plural. Occassionally in use the third person in dual and plural may be distinguished from the second person by preceding the second/third person dual/plural form with the third person singular form <u>zâk</u>.

<u>zen</u>   'you/they'

<u>zâk</u>   'they'

<u>zen</u>   'they'

The personal pronoun root is a composite unit of basic person and number indicators. Chart 1 gives the basic components as far as they can be determined.

Chart 1 Personal Pronouns

	sing. (â)	sing. (k)	$\begin{Bmatrix}\text{non}\\\text{sing}\end{Bmatrix}$ u. (e) (t)	$\begin{Bmatrix}\text{non}\\\text{sing}\end{Bmatrix}$ l. (e) (n)
1st.per.(n)	nâ I/me		net we/us(du)	nen we/us(pl)
2nd.per.(g/z)	gâ you		zet you(du)	zen you(pl)
3rd.per. (z)	zâk he/she/it		zet they(du)	zen they(pl)

The similarities and differences of the possessor
indicating set of enclitics which occur with nouns
should be noted. Chart 2 presents them and their
components.

Chart 2. Possessor Indicators

	sing. (a)	(non/du. (sing)	(non/pl. (sing) (ŋâ)
		(i) (kŋâ)	(i)
1st.per. (n)	-nâ my	-nikŋâ our (du.)	-niŋâ (pl)
2nd.per. (g/z)-gâ/kâ	your	-zikŋâ your (du.)	-ziŋâ (pl)
3rd.per. (ŋ/z)-ŋâ	his etc.	-zikŋâ their(du.)	-ziŋâ (pl)

Again the similarities between this set and the
Emphatic Pronoun set is interesting to note.

Generally the context indicates whether second
or third person in dual or plural is to be inferred
in the use of the ambiguous pronoun forms, but if the
speaker feels there is a chance of being misunderstood
he will clarify the referent in one of three ways.

1. Specifically identify the referent.

2. If the referent changes use the emphasis morpheme
ko after a pronoun to emphatically contrast the referent
with the previous referent.

3.   The third singular personal pronoun form z̲â̲k̲

may precede the ambiguous dual or plural pronoun form

to identify the referent as being third person rather

that second person.

z̲e̲t̲

you/they two

'you/they two'

z̲â̲k̲   z̲e̲t̲

he   you/they two

'they two'

The regular personal pronouns manifest the head

tagmeme of the Qualified Noun Phrase. They may be

qualified by adjectives numerals and demonstrative

pronouns. They manifest the clause level object slot

and manifest the axes tagmemes of most of the Axis

Relator Phrases. The regular pronouns have the

following distribution in phrase and clause level

tagmemes.

Object Tagmeme

n̲â̲   n̲i̲ - b̲a̲p̲

me   give me- he will

'He will give it to me.'

Subject Axis Relator Phrase.

When the regular personal pronouns manifest the axis of this phrase they bear the relator subject marking enclitic -ŋâ.

<u>Note</u> This causes the vowel â of the dual and plural pronouns to change to i. The forms are presented in chart 3.

Chart 3. Subject Pronouns.

	sing.	du.	pl.
1st.per.	nâŋâ	nikŋâ	niŋâ
2nd.per.	gâŋâ	zikŋâ	ziŋâ
3rd.per.	zâkŋâ	zikŋâ	ziŋâ

<u>zi - ŋâ</u>   <u>qalem</u>   <u>u - pi</u>

they - subj   take care of be - they will

'They will take care of it.'

Accompaniment Axis Relator Phrase.

The Accompaniment tagmeme may be manifested by the accompaniment root <u>sot</u> 'and/with' or the accompaniment form <u>ârândâŋ</u> 'together', or a combination of both forms together <u>sot ârândâŋ</u> 'together with'. The regular personal pronouns manifest the axis tagmeme. The optional identification slot may be filled by a pronoun, noun or noun phrase. Up to two such phrases may occur in sequence in the object or subject tagmeme on the clause level.

For example;

Ñen sot zen sot ândi - bap

us   and them with live - he will

'He will live with us and them.'

Gâ   nen sot ârândâŋ   ku   - nat

you we   with together hit it- we will

'You will dance together with us.'

Nen   ârândâŋ   ku   - nat

we   together hit it - we will

'We will dance together.'

Ununu zen   sot   âi   - bat

Ununu them with go   - I will

'I will go with Ununu people.'

Benefaction/Possession Axis Relator Phrase.

When the regular personal pronoun roots fill the
axis of the Benefaction/Possession Axis Relator Phrase,
the Benefactive/Possessive enclitic -gât fills the
Relator tagmeme. The resulting forms show normal
possession. The regular Personal Pronoun roots agree
in person and number with the possessor identifying
enclitics (if any) on the noun qualified in the
possession phrase.

zâk - kât   buku   - ŋâ
he - poss. cousin - his

'his cousin'

The optional identification tagmeme may be filled by
a noun, phrase or clause. The forms of the regular
personal pronouns with the possession enclitic added
are presented in Chart 4.

Chart 4. Benefactive/Possessive Pronouns.

	sing.	dl.	pl.
1st.per.	nâgât	nekât	neŋgât
2nd.per.	gâgât	zekât	zeŋgât
3rd.per.	zâkkât	zekât	zeŋgât

Note. The morpho-phonemic changes; k+k=kk, t+k=k,
n+g=ŋâ when the regular pronouns take the possession
enclitic -ŋât/kât

nâ   -   ŋât

I   -ben./poss.

'mine' (for me)

Locative Axis Relator Phrase.

The regular personal pronoun roots usually do not
on their own fill the axis tagmeme of the Locative Axis
Relator Phrase, rather the axis tagmeme is manifested
by a Benefaction/Possession Axis Relator Phrase with a
personal pronoun root manifesting its axis tagmeme.
The Locative enclitic -en manifests the relator tagmeme
of the Locative Axis Relator Phrase.
For example;

neŋ   -   ŋâr   -   en

us   -   poss. -   loc.

'with us' (at our place)

Ununu   zeŋ   -   ŋâr   -   en

Ununu   them   -   poss. -   loc.

'with those Ununu village people' (at Ununu village)

1.6.4. Emphatic Personal Pronoun Roots.

The emphatic personal pronoun roots are presented in Chart 5.

Chart 5. Emphatic Personal Pronouns.

	sing.	dl.	pl.
1st.per.	ninâ	niikŋâ	niiŋâ
2nd.per.	gikâ	ziikŋâ	ziiŋâ
3rd.per.	zikŋâ	ziikŋâ	ziiŋâ

They have the following distribution.

Possession Tagmeme.

<u>ninâ</u>   <u>bâu</u>   <u>-</u>   <u>nâ</u>

my own   pig   -m   my

'my very own pig.

<u>niiŋâ</u>   <u>di</u>   <u>-</u>   <u>niŋ</u>   <u>-</u>   <u>an</u>

our own   speech -   our   -   loc.

8in our very own language'

Object Tagmeme

<u>ɡikâ</u>   <u>ɡo</u>   -   <u>bi</u>

you yourself hit you -   they will

'You are the one that they will strike.'

Subject Tagmeme

<u>Gikâ</u>   <u>tuu</u>   -   <u>ban</u>

you yourself   make it   -   you will

'You will make it yourself.'

Note; In the subject tagmeme the emphatic pronouns
may take the limiter enclitic -<u>âk</u>. This functions as
Subject marker and has the effect of intensifying the
pronoun to the exclusion of all other parties.

<u>nin</u>   - <u>ak</u>   <u>mim</u>   -   <u>bat</u>

I myself - only   get it -   I will

'I myself am the only one who will get it.'

     In other tagmemes the emphatic pronouns may
take the specifier enclitic -<u>ik</u> intensifying the
pronoun to the exclusion of all other parties.

<u>niiŋ</u>   - <u>ik</u>   <u>niŋâ</u>   - <u>bap</u>

us ourselves -   spec. give us - he will

'He will give it only to us.'

1.7   Relators

Relators are a class of roots which manifest the relator tagmeme of Axis Relator Phrases. This class is made up of the free forms <u>sot</u> 'and/with', <u>ârândâŋ</u> 'together' and <u>ŋâbâ</u> 'from' and a whole range of enclitics which function as relators.

1.8   Time Roots

Time Roots form a closed class of roots which manifest the time tagmeme at the clause level.   This class includes;

<u>mârum</u>	'already/previously'
<u>irak</u>	'today'
<u>irabot</u>	'soon/now'
<u>ŋâran</u>	'much later'
<u>itârâŋ</u>	'now/soon'
<u>ombeŋan</u>	'previously' (below)
<u>kwâkŋan</u>	'later' (above)
<u>ŋâtâm</u>	'later
<u>mukan</u>	'tomorrow/yesterday'
<u>marâ</u>	'day before yesterday/ day after tomorrow.'
<u>kândom</u>	'first'
<u>bet</u>	'afterwards/last'

1.9 Verb Roots

1.9.1 Intransitive Verb Roots

Intransitive verb roots occur in the nucleus of the in intransitive verb stem and generally indicate motion, state, condition, or an emotion.

Examples are;

ga-	'to come'
tap -	'to sit/stay
mom-	'to die'
op-	'to be/do
bâli-	'to be out of order'
yâmbâre-	'to be heavy/difficult
zâi-	*to ascend'
ândi-	'to live/do'
zem-	'to recline/sleep'

1.9.2   Transitive verb roots

Transitive verb roots occur in the nucleus of the transitive verb stem. They generally indicate action. Examples are;

kendâ-	'to dig it'
kârâ-	'to pound/cut/dig it'
mem-	'to get/have'
aa-	'to do it'(varieties of womens work)
loke-	'to tip/our it out'
ɑ̂su-	'to hold it'
īu-	'to carry it on the shoulder'
tuu-	'to do/make it'

THE STEM

2.1 Introduction

The stem is the level between the root and word on the grammatical heirarchy. It involves various forms of compounding, reduplication and derivational affixation.

The following stem classes have been found and they are labelled basically on the basis of their distribution at higher levels.

2.1 Adjective Stems

Adjective stems are derived from other classes of roots or other constructions by the suffixation of -ŋâ.

From noun roots.

kârâpŋâ	'hot'	from	kârâp	'fire'
kâtikŋâ	'strong/hard'	from	kât	'stone'
kâmbukŋâ	'forbidden'	from	kâmbuk	'taboo'

From adverb roots.

yeŋŋâ	'insignificant'	from	yen	'without reason significence'
tikŋâ	'secret/hidden'	from	tik	'secretly'

From verbal forms.

Adjectives may be derived by the reduplication
of verbal forms. The forms may be identical with
those of nouns derived from verbal forms by reduplication
but they manifest adjective tagmemes. As with the case
of nouns derived from verb forms, other clause level
tagmemes may occur with the reduplicated verb form.
Adjectives derived by such reduplication commonly take
the adjective suffix -ŋâ.

gigiŋâ	'lowly/poor'	from	gei-	'to go down'
zâizâiŋâ	'proud/important'	from	zâi-	'to go up'
mumuŋâ	'dead'	from	mom	'to die'
niniŋâ	'edible'	from	nem	'to eat'
igikŋâ	'visible'	from	ek	'to see it'
kâmbu mimiŋâ	'theiving '	from	kâmbu	'theft' and
			me	'to get/take it'
mân igikŋâ	'invisible'	from	mân	negative and
			ek	'to see it'
sât luluŋâ	'obedient'	from	sât	'teeth' and
			lu-	'to lift/obey'
kiŋ bikŋâ mumuŋâ	'paralyzed'	from	kiŋ bik	'hands' and feet
			mo-	'to die'

From numerals

Adjectives derived from numerals are the equivalent of ordinal numerals. They are also commonly used as names for the days of the week.

zagâtṇâ   'second'   (Tuesday)

karâmbuṇâ   'third'   (Wednesday)

kimembuṇâ   'fourth'   (Thursday)

mamimṇâ   'fifth'   (Friday) from maṃim 'thumb'

Intensification of adjectival forms.

Adjectival forms are generally intensified by being followed by one or two intensifying forms. If two forms follow the adjective the intensification is greater than if only one occurs. This construction is an adjective phrase covered on the phrase level, (Section 4.3.0). The form most commonly found filling an intensifier tagmeme is the intensifier ṇâi. If two intensifier tagmemes occur in a construction the second is filled by ṇâi. Other forms which commonly fill the first intensifier tagmeme are patâ 'big', mâiktârâ 'small' and kâtik 'strong'.

kârep	'long/tall/distant'
kârep patâ	'very long'
kârep patâ ŋâi	'extremely long'
doŋbep patâ	'very many'
doŋbep patâ ŋâi	'extremely many'
âlipŋâ ŋâi	'very good'
bâliŋâ kâtikŋâ	'very bad'
bâliŋâ kâtikŋâ ŋâi	'extremely bad'
mâiktârâ	'small'
mâiktârâ ŋâi	'very small'

Note; Patâ 'big' may occur as an intensifier with most adjectives indicating size or quantity or weight but not with mâiktârâ 'small' and bituktâ 'few' (small amount) due to the obvious clash.

Reduplication of adjectives in a phrase generally has the effect of pluralization.

zuu mâik	'small bush animal'
zuu mâik mâik	'small bush animals'
a patâ	'big man'
a patâ patâ	'big men'
kut ŋâi	'a thing' (kut 'name', ŋâi 'a')
kut ŋâi ŋâi	'things'

However it has been observed that several adjective stems are formed by reduplication of adjective roots, the reduplication having the effect of intensification rather than pluralization. These adjectives and their intensified forms are given here.

<u>lotŋâ</u>	'weak/soft'
<u>lolot</u>	'very weak /soft'
<u>kâtikŋâ</u>	'tough/strong'
<u>kâtikâtikŋâ</u>	'very tough/strong'

Some adjective stems are formed by reduplication of other class roots. In these reduplicated forms is a heterophonic change of the first syllable to begin with m or b or g or gw. Rules for prediction of the changes have not been found.

<u>kubik mubik</u>	'fixed/prepared'	from <u>kubik-</u>	'to correct/fix
<u>uruk meruk</u>	'lowly'	from <u>uruŋsâ-</u>	'to sink down'
<u>kwak mak</u>	'confused/ignorant'	from <u>kwaksâ-</u>	'to be confused'
<u>kwâtep matep</u>	'varying/changeable'	from <u>kwâtepku-</u>	'to cover'
<u>kelik melik</u>	'well/fine'	from <u>kelik-</u>	'to make well'
<u>gulip malip</u>	'void/waste'	from <u>gulipku-</u>	'to wipe out/ waste'
<u>giliŋ bâleŋ</u>	'powerful'	from <u>giliŋ</u>	
<u>dâŋ bâŋ</u>	'careful/thorough'	from <u>dâŋ</u>	'carefully'
<u>kendon bandon</u>	'restrained/sel controlled'	from <u>kendon</u>	'rest/refrain'

târâk bârâk   'prepared/orderly'   from târârak 'straight'

hâtu batup   'partial'   from hâtup

oset boset   'scattered'   from oset   'amongst'

purik gurik   'spinning/turning' from purik- 'to turn'

mâbu gwâbure 'steering'   from mâbure- 'to turn it'

Compounded stems.

Some adjective stems are formed by compounding noun root and numeral root. For example;

pân kânok   'short/nearby'   from pân 'middle'and
                                   kânok 'one'

Other adjective stems are phrasal compounds formed of an Axis Relator Phrase in which the axis tagmeme is manifested by a noun and the relator tagmeme manifested by a compound accompaniment enclitic form, built from the basic Possessor indicating set of enclitics, (1.4) and an accompaniment component -oot.

too - ŋ - oot

water - its - acc.

'wet'

kârâp - ŋ - oot

fire - its - acc.

'hot/heated'

<u>pibâ</u> - <u>ŋ</u> - <u>oot</u>

wind - its - acc.

'with air/gas'

<u>kelâk</u> - <u>ziŋ</u> - <u>oot</u>

fat - their - acc.

'fat ones'

2.2   Adverb Stems

Adverb stems manifest the modifier tagmeme of
Modified Verb Phrases and the axis tagmeme of Limitation
Axis Relator Phrases. The relator tagmeme being manifested
by the limiter enclitic -âk.

keg   -   âk

quickly   -   lim.

'only quickly'

tig   -   âk

secretly   -   lim·

'only secretly'

dâŋ   -   âk

carefully   -   lim·

'only carefully'

Some adverbs can be reduplicated to intensify the
meaning.

mulun   'slowly/carefully'   mulun mulun   'very slowly/carefully'

Some adverb stems are derived from adjective roots.
In such derivation the adjective marker (if any) is lost.

bâliŋ   'poorly/badly' from bâliŋâ   'bad/out of order'

âlip   'well/fine'   from âlipŋâ   'good'

2.3   Noun stems

Noun stems are formed by the two following methods.

1.   Reduplication,

2.   Compounding.

Reduplication

Noun stems are formed by the   reduplication of verb nucleus. Generally the whole verb root is re-duplicated but sometimes only the two initial or final syllables. Such nouns formed by reduplication may take enclitics to form Axis Relator Phrases.

| or | - | ot | - | ŋâ | from op(ot) 'to be/do' |
| do | - | do | - | his | |

'his behaviour'

| âi | - | âi | - | ŋâ | from âi- 'to go' |
| go | - | go | - | its | |

'its voyage'

| mindu | - | mindu | from mindu- 'to gather' |
| gather | - | gather | |

'meeting'

| tuu | - | tuu | - | ŋâ | from tuu- 'to make/build' |
| make | - | make | - | its | |

'its construction'

âsa - âsagi - ŋâ   from âsage-   'to appear'
syll. - birth - his
'his birth'

kulemgu - gu - ŋâ   from kulemgu- 'to write'
write - syll.- its
'its writing'

târokwâ - kwat - ŋâ   from târokwap- 'to add to'
add - syll. - its
'its addition/extension'

     Derivation from a   verbal form may in fact be
regarded as derivation from a clause since the fillers of
other clause level tagmemes have been observed occurring
with the reduplicated verb form. Usually however, no
more than two other tagmemes occur. Such forms must be
regarded as phrase or clause units embedded in the clause
level.
The following clause level tagmemes have been observed
occurring with the reduplicated verb form.

Subject Tagmeme.
waŋgâ - gât   âiâi - ŋâ   from âi- 'to go'
boat - poss.   voyage - its
'the voyage of the boat'

Location Tagmeme

kwâkŋ   -   an   tâtat   -   ŋâ   from tap   'to stay/sit'

on top -   be   sitting -   its

'something to sit upon' (chair)

Manner Tagmeme

kek   âiâi   -   ŋâ

quickly voyage -   his

'his quick trip'

Negative Tagmeme

mân   nâŋgânâŋgâ   -   ŋâ   from   nâŋgâ- 'to hear/heed'

neg.   understanding- his

'his lack of understanding'

Object Tagmeme

den   lulu   -   ŋâ   from   lu-   'to lift/carry'

talk lifting-   his

'his obedience'

den   bâliŋ   sâsâ   from sâ- 'to speak'

talk evil   speech

'evil speech'

Compounding

Noun stems are   also formed by the fossilization
or fusing of a phrase into a compact unit, or the compounding
of various root classes and construction types. In such
constructions each element manifests a core tagmeme.
Noun root plus noun root (or Attributive Noun Phrase
fused together).

mirâsiŋ   'sun' from mirâ 'dwelling place' and
                          si-ŋâ 'its eye'

kârâptooŋâ   'kerosene' from kârâp 'fire' and
                              too-ŋâ 'its liquid'

Noun root plus adjective root (or Qualified Noun Phrase
fused together).

umâlip   from   um   'inside' and âlipŋâ   'well'
'happiness'

umbâlâ   from   um   'inside' and bâliŋâ 'bad'
'sadness'

mulumkatik   from   mulum   'snake' and kâtikŋâ 'tough'
'death adder'

Noun root plus transitive verb root.
hânsu   from hân 'land' and su- ' to pierce'
'shovel'

hânkârâ   from hân   'land' and kârâ-   'to pound'
'pick/mattock'

nakaat   from nak   'timber'and aat   'to scratch'
'plane'

ala   from a   'man' and la-   'to lift/carry'
'carriage/vehicle'

2.4   Numeral Stems

The basic numerals are the roots <u>kânok</u> 'one, <u>zaqât</u> 'two', <u>karâmbut</u> 'three' and <u>kimembut</u> 'four'. These roots occur in compound stems for many of the higher numerals.

<u>nâmbur   —   ân   kânok</u>
other side —   loc.   one
'six'

<u>nâmbur   —   ân   karâmbut</u>
other side —   loc.   three
'eight'

<u>bâtnâmbut</u> 'five' is a compound stem derived from the noun roots <u>bet</u> 'hand' and <u>nâmbut</u> 'side/half'. This stem in turn serves as a basic numeral for higher numbers such as

<u>kiin</u> <u>bâtnâmbut</u>
foot hand-one-side   'fifteen'

The numerals six to nine are phrasal compounds, a Qualified Noun Phrase with the head tagmeme filled by an Axis Relator Phrase with <u>nâmbut</u> manifesting the axis and the locative enclitic <u>-ân</u> as relator plus the basic numerals.

nâmbur — ân kânok

other side — loc. one

'six'

nâmbur — ân zaɡât

other side — loc. two

'seven'

nâmbur — ân karâmbut

other side — loc. three

'eight'

nâmbur — ân kimembut

other side — loc. four

'nine'

bâzaɡât 'ten' . This compound stem comes from the noun
bet 'hand' and the numeral zaɡât 'two'. This compound
serves as a basic numeral for higher numbers. An alternative
form for ten is

bet   nâmbut   nâmbut
hand   this side   that side

'both hands'

Numerals from eleven to fifteen have the same structure
as six to nine but nâmburân is replaced by <u>kiin</u> from
<u>ken</u> 'foot!

<u>kiin</u>	<u>kânok</u>	'eleven'
<u>kiin</u>	<u>zaqât</u>	'twelve'
<u>kiin</u>	<u>karâmbut</u>	'thirteen'
<u>kiin</u>	<u>kimembut</u>	'fourteen'
<u>kiin</u>	<u>bâtnâmbut</u>	'fifteen'

Numerals sixteen to nineteen have the same structure
but the axis of the locative Axis Relator Phrase is
manifested by <u>kiin</u> <u>nâmbut</u> 'foot· other side' and the
relator tagmeme is manifested by the locative enclitic
<u>-ân</u>

<u>kiin</u>	<u>nâmburân</u>	<u>kânok</u>	'sixteen'
<u>kiin</u>	<u>nâmburân</u>	<u>zaqât</u>	'seventeen'
<u>kiin</u>	<u>nâmburân</u>	<u>karâmbut</u>	'eighteen'
<u>kiin</u>	<u>nâmburân</u>	<u>kimembut</u>	'nineteen'

<u>a</u>   <u>ŋâi</u>

man   one

'twenty'

This is a phrasal compound derived from the Qualified
Noun Phrase with the structure +Head = man + Numeral = one.
For the multiples of twenty one is replaced by another
numeral.

<u>a</u>   <u>zaqât</u>

man   two

'forty'

<u>a</u>   <u>bâtnâmbut</u>

man   five

'one hundred'

For all numerals above twenty except multiples of
twenty, the next lower multiple of twenty is followed
by the Possession Axis Relator Phrase manifesting
<u>a ŋâi</u> 'another man' in the axis and locative enclitic
-<u>ân</u> filling the relator tagmeme. To this is added the
relevant numeral from the list on numerals from one to
nineteen.

For example;

<u>a</u>   <u>kânok</u>   <u>a</u> <u>ŋâi</u>   - n   <u>kiin</u>   <u>nâmbur</u>   - <u>ân</u> <u>kimembut</u>

man   one   man another - loc, foot   other side-loc. four

'thirty nine'

The numerals once, twice, thrice etc are conpounds
on noun root and numeral root in a Qualified Noun
Phrase.

<u>sâp</u> <u>kânok</u>   'once'   from <u>sâp</u> 'fly' and <u>kânok</u> 'one'

<u>sâp</u> <u>zaĝât</u>   'twice

<u>sâp</u> <u>karâmbut</u> 'thrice'

2.5   Particle Stems

Particle stems are apparently fossilized forms derived from higher level constructions or portions of higher level constructions. Particular stems function as connectives and conjunctions at paragraph, sentence, clause and phrase levels. Some examples are given below. oi 'and' is a fossilized third person singular hetero. form of the verb op 'to be/do'

gât ko 'because of that' (so then) is a compounding of the   benefactive/possessive morpheme gât and the completed action marker that occurs with non final verb forms ko 'then'.

zorat 'concerning that' is compounded of the pronoun root zorâ 'that' and the reference enclitic -at.

zorat ko 'as a result of that' is compounded of the demonstrative pronoun zorâ 'that', the reference enclitic -at and the completed action marker ko 'then'.

2.6   Time   Stems

Time stems manifest the time tagmeme on the clause
level. Some of the time stems are;

mârumŋan 'in the distant past!   It is a phrasal compound
(Axis Relator Phrase) formed from mârum 'previously/already'
and the compound possessed locative enclitic - ŋan .

topkwap 'in the beginning' This is a fossilized form of
the verb stem topkwap- 'to begin'. The verb stem is made
up of two roots top (noun) 'base/origin' and
kwap- (verb) 'to do/make'.

aŋgât 'morning'. This is a phrasal compound derived from
a Possessive / Benefactive Axis Relator Phrase with the
root aŋ manifesting the axis tagmeme and the possessive/
benefactive morpheme -gât manifesting the relator tagmeme.

ŋâtiksâisâi 'evening' is derived by reduplication of the
verb form;

ŋâtiksâi

be night-it (hetero)

'it became night'

A number of time stems are derived from noun roots by
including the locative enclitic -ân/yân thus making a
Locative Axis Relator Phrase.

<u>ŋâtiɡ - ân</u>

night - loc.

'at night / in the night'

<u>sirâm   -   ᷄ân</u>

day   -   loc

'in the day'

<u>maa   -   yân</u>

sunshine- loc

'when it is sunny'

<u>mab   -   ân</u>

rain - loc

'when it is rainy'

2:7 Verb Stems

2.7.1 Intransitive Verb Stems

Intransitive derived verb stems are formed from adjective roots by replacing the adjective marker -ŋâ with the intransitive verbalizer suffix -e.

Examples are;

<u>lore</u>   to weaken/tire   (from lotŋâ   weak/soft)

<u>kâtige</u>   to be tough/hard (from kâtikŋâ   tough/hard)

<u>yâmbâre</u> to be heavy   (from <u>yâmbâtŋâ</u> heavy)

<u>bâli</u>   to be bad   (from <u>bâliŋâ</u>   bad)

Note the morphophonemic changes;

t   becomes   r

k   becomes   g

e   is lost following i

Other intransitive verb stems are formed by combining the verb root <u>sâ</u> 'to speak' with an adjunct root (or root of some other class) to form a verb stem. For example <u>ŋâtiksâ</u> 'to become night' from <u>ŋâtik</u> 'night' and   <u>sâ</u>- 'to speak.'

Some verb stems of this type are;

<u>tâŋsâ</u>-   'to break/snap'   from <u>tâŋ</u>   'break'

<u>giligâlâksâ</u>- 'to collapse'   from <u>giligâlak</u> 'collapse'

<u>aŋsâ</u>-   'to become morning' from <u>aŋgât</u>   'morning/dawn'

<u>hiriŋsâ</u>-   'to be quiet'   from <u>hiriŋ</u>   'quiet'

<u>pindiŋsâ</u>-   'to bow down'   from <u>pindiŋ</u>   'bow'

piksâ-	'to fill up	from	pik	'full'
puriksâ-	'to turn about'	from	purik	'turn'
uruŋsâ-	'to sink down'	from	uruŋ	'sink'
sâbâŋsâ-	'to cease raining'	from	sâbâŋ	'cease'
ululunsâ-	'to become ripe'	from	ululun	'ripe'
bâpsâ-	'to cease functioning'	from	bâp	'die'
wiŋgapsâ-	'to whistle'	from	wiŋgap	'whistle'
dinsâ-	'to speak a message'	from	den	'message'

2.7.2   Transitive Verb Stems

Transitive derived verb stems are formed by the
addition of the object marking suffixes to transitive
verb roots as in the case of subclass 1 stems and to
other root classes as well as in the case of subclass
11 stems.   The object marking suffixes have a verbalizing
effect on other root classes so that they become transitive
derived verb stems of subclass 11.

With the exception of five verb roots

(-_sâ_-   to call

-_se_-/-_si_-/-_su_- to pierce

-_pan_-/-_ban_-/ -_mban_- 'to place/leave'

-_ek_-/-_ik_-/-_it_-   'to see'   and

-_se_-/-_si_/ 'to burn/cook')

all transitive verb roots in K$_o$mba occur with object
marking suffixes.   With the five exceptions listed, the
object markers take a prefix position.

no-_nsâ_-   'to call me'

no-_se_   'to pierce me'

_nâ_-ban   'to place me'

ne-(e)_k_-   'to see me'

ni-_se_-   'to burn me'

The structure of the Transitive Verb Stem is an
obligatory core manifested by a root plus an obligatory
object slot filled by a member of the object marking sets.
Tr. Vb. St. = core:root + periphery: obj.marker.
There are two allomorph subclasses of the object marking
suffixes and transitive verb roots filling the core are
divided into two subclasses on the basis of their
occurrence with one of the two allomorph subclasses.

It must be noted that each subclass of transitive
verb roots contains a verb root morpheme represented by
zero and that these aare distinguished by the allomorphs
of the object marking suffixes. Thus the zero morpheme
means to give or to bite with subclass I allomorphs and
to hit/kill with subclass 11 allomorphs.

ø - ni   'to give me/to bite me (subclass I)

ø - no   'to hit/kill me'   (subclass II)

The object marking suffixes indicate the person and
number of the object of the clause and agree in person
and number with any free from object indicators which may
occur.

The object markers may be analysed as having composite
structure of person, number and subclass marker.

The subclass 1 object markers are presented in chart 6 .

Chart 6, Subclass 1 object markers.

		sing.	du.	pl.
		∅	(kâ)	(ŋgâ)
1st.per.	(n)	ni	nikâ	niŋgâ
2nd.per.	(g/z)	gi	zikâ	ziŋgâ
3rd.per.	(∅/z)	∅/zi	zikâ	ziŋgâ

The i which occurs in all forms is a subclass 1
marker.

Note; Vowel pertubation is a complicating factor in
single syllable verb roots. There is pertubation between
e <-> i and o <-> u. The change in vowel quality is caused
by suffix enviroment when suffixes are added to the stem.

The basic root of the verb 'to see' is -ek but it
perturbs to -ik and we have included it in subclass 1
rather than create another subclass for this one verb.
Another complicating factor with this verb is that it is
one of the exceptions that take the object markers in a
prefix position and the root begins with a vowel. This
in some combinations leads to vowel reduction and in
other combinations to the loss of the final vowel of the
object marker.

ni   -   ik   -   pap   becomes nikpap

me   -   see -   he will

'He will see me.'

niŋâ - ik - pap   becomes niŋitpap

us   - see - he will

'He will see us.'

The thrid person singular object marker occurs only
with zero morpheme meaning 'to bite'. An allomorph
pindâ occurs with the zero morpheme meaning 'to give'.
All other Subclass 1 transitive verb roots occur with
a zero morpheme indicating 3rd.person singular object.

    With certain verb roots in the core, transitive verb
stems with subclass 1 object markers may indicate a
benefactee rather than an object.

ekap kwat - ni - ban

leaf do - me - you will

'Write a letter for /to me.'

mambât - ni - ban

await - me - you will

'You will wait for me.'

sât - ŋâ kwat - ni - ban

teeth - its do - me - you will

'You will sharpen it for me.'

Chart 7, Subclass 11 object markers.

		Sing.	Du.	Pl.
		(∅)	(ko)	(ŋgo)
1st.per.	(n)	no	nâko	nâŋgo
2nd.per.	(g/z)	go	zâko	zâŋgo
3rd.per.	(∅/z)	∅/ko (ku/gu)	zâko	zâŋgo

The subclass 11 distinguishing marker is o/â.

The 3rd.person singular object marker <u>ko</u> occurs with
the zero morpheme meaning to hit/kill. <u>ko</u> or one of the
allomorphemes <u>ku</u> or <u>gu</u> occurs with all other class 11
transitive verb roots except the verb root <u>su</u> meaning
'to pierce' and the verb root <u>pa(n)</u> meabing 'to place/
leave', which occur with a zero morpheme indicating
third person singular object.

Note; The verb meaning 'to place/leave' has been analysed
as belonging to subclass 11 even though there are obvious
modifications to both the root and the object markers.
This root is one of the group which take the object
markers in a prefix position. Arbitrary modifications
occur at the junction of the object marker and the root
to give distinction between singular, dual and plural
forms.

Self Inflicted/ Reciprocal Action

There are two allomorph subclasses of object markers indicating self inflicted action. These are; -aŋgâ-/ yaŋgâ- occurring with subclass 1 transitive verb roots and -ago- / -yago- occurring with subclass II transitive verb roots. These markers do not indicate person and number, they have a composite structure of: subclass marker and self inflicted action marker.

<u>kari</u> - <u>yaŋgâ</u> - <u>wan</u>   (subclass I)

pound - self - I did

'I cut myself'

<u>kubik</u> - <u>aŋgâ</u> - m <u>ta-at</u> (subclass 1)

fix - self - homo. stay-you have

'You are fixing youself up.'

<u>kâsâp</u> - <u>ago</u> - m <u>ândi</u> - <u>we</u> (subclass II)

divide - self - homo. live - they did

'They were divided among themselves.'

<u>kâpi</u> - <u>yago</u> - m <u>zi</u> - <u>wet</u> (subclass II)

wrap - self - homo.lay - they two did

'They lay coiled about each other.'

Although generally self inflicted action is indicated, this is not always the meaning conveyed. In plural forms reciprocal action may be indicated as in the final example above. Sometimes the meaning indicated may be passive.

kâsâp - ago - we

divide - self - they did

'They were divided.'

tâmbet - ago - bi

ruin   - self - they will

'They will be destroyed.'

Below in Chart 8 are charted the five verb roots which
take the object markers in prefix position. They are
charted with their object markers.

Chart 8, Verb Roots taking prefix object markers.

	Subclass 1				Subclass 11
	to see/look at	to burn/cook	to call	to pierce	to place
1st.Per.Sing.	nek/nik	nise	nonsâ	nose	nâban
2nd.Per.Sing.	gek/gik	gise	gonsâ	gose	gâban
3rd.Per.Sing.	ek/ik	se	konsâ	su	pa(n)
1st.Per.Du.	nikit	nikâse	nâkonse	nâkose	nâpan
2/3rd.Per.Du.	zikit	zikâse	zâkonse	zâkose	zâpan
1st.Per.Pl.	niŋgit	niŋgâse	nâŋgonse	nâŋgose	nâmban
2/3rd.Per.Pl.	ziŋgit	ziŋgâse	ziŋgonse	zâŋgose	zâmban

A small number of transitive verb stems are derived from intransitive verb roots by the addition of the transitivizer prefix m- (or its allomorph n- which may occur with the root amuŋ meaning to break).

mânâŋât 'to cut/snap it'   from ânâŋât 'to snap/break'
mâburem   'to turn it'   from âburem 'to turn'
namuŋ/mamuŋ 'to break it'   from amuŋ   'to break'

Transitive verb stems are derived from the following classes of roots also.
Noun roots;

The verbalizer -ku- on voiceless final consonant roots is in fact a third person singular subclass 11 transitive verb object marker and -gu- is an allomorph for roots with a voiced consonant in final position.

sâlâp-ku-   'to count/read it'   from sâlâp   'finger'
kulem-gu-   'to write/mark it'   from kulem   'mark'
tân-gu-   'to help him'   from tân   'walking stick'
kâsâp-ku-   'to divide it'   from kâsâp   'division'
tâmbet-ku-   'to destroy/ruin it' from tâmbet   'destruction'

Adjective roots

    The verbalizer -ko-/-ku- occurs with adjective roots.

<u>sumun-ko-</u>	'to make it ḏark/dirty	from <u>sumuŋ</u>	'darkcoloured'
<u>kâu-ko-</u>	'to make it white'	from <u>kâu</u>	'white/grey'
<u>kuriŋ-ko-</u>	'to make it red'	from <u>kuriŋâ</u>	'red'
<u>salek-ko</u>	'to make it clean'	from <u>salek</u>	'clean'

Morphophenemic Rules.

The final phoneme/s of verb stems may be modified in certain suffix enviroments. In some cases the initial phoneme of the suffix is changed. The following set of rules enables the prediction of the morphophonemic changes that occur when stems and suffixes come together to form verbs. Note that these rules are to be applied only to verb stem suffix junctions.

Stem final	+ Suffix initial	= Resultant form
1. stop/nasal	identical stop/nasal	stop/nasal
2. t/p/n	i	ri
3. p	t	t
4. k	â/i	gâi/gi
5. k/ŋ	w	gâw/ŋâw
6. t/p/n	w	râw
7. p/k	r	pt/kt
8. p/t/k	b	p/tp/kp
9. ŋ/t/k	a/e	ŋsa/ŋse/tsa/tse/ksa/kse
10. n	a/e	nza/nze
11. ei/âi	i	iari/ari
12. e	a/e	ia/ie
13. i	i	ei
14. o	a/e	ua/ue

15.	â	a	a
16.	â/a	e	e
17.	â	i	i
18.	a	i	âi
19.	u	i	oi

Verb Stem subclasses.

The majority of verb stems are regular in the
pattern in which the take suffixes. The changes are
predictable by the morph⌒phonemic rules listed above.
However some verb stems add one or two extra phonemes
or loose or change a final phoneme in certain suffix
enviroments. As there is no clear consistent
morpho⌒phonemic reasons we divide the verb stems
into cubclasses for classification. Subclass one
consists of the regular verb stems which consistently
follow the rules listed above.

Subclass two verb stems take an additional stem phoneme
m- before suffixation which begins with -b. Before -r
initial suffixes the m- becomes n- and the initial -r
of the suffix changes to -d. Before -w initial suffixes
râ- is added.

For example;   pa- 'to place/leave it'
(parâ-wan)   parâwan   'I put it'
(pâm-bap)   pâmbap   'he will put it'
(pân-rat)   pândat   'we two will put it'

Some of the common verb stems in this subclass are;

ne-   'to eat'

se-   'to cook/burn'

ko-   'to hit/kill'

me-   'to get/have'

mo -   'to die'

ze-   'to recline/sleep'

Note; Verb stems of this subclass which have as the
single stem vowel the vowels e or o are subject to
vowel dissimilation in certain suffix enviroments.
(e becomes i, o becomes u) These changes are
morphophonemically predictable.

se-   'to cook.burn'

sim-bap 'It will cook/burn'

si-ap   'It has cooked/burnt'

Subclass three verb stems is made up of verb stems which have a double vowel or a single vowel in stem final position. It should be noted however that not all vowel final stems are of this subclass. Subclass three verb stems take an extra phoneme g- on the stem before suffixes which begin with a vowel.

For example, <u>tuu-</u>   'to make/build'

<u>tuug-ip</u>   'He made it'

<u>tuug-an</u>   'I have made it.'

<u>tuug-en</u>   'We have made it.'

Some of the verb stems of this subclass are;

<u>tuu-</u>   'to make/build/

<u>su-</u>   'to pierce'

<u>zi-</u>   'to bite him'

<u>ni-</u>   'to give/bite me'

<u>qi-</u>   'to give/bite you'

Subclass four verb stems have a stem final p which
is lost in certain suffix enviroments and modified in
others. When followed by a -w initial suffix the stem
final p- becomes râ-. Before suffixes beginning with a
vowel, the stem final p is lost. Before suffixes beginning
with -b the stem final -p is lost, but it causes the
suffix initial to change to -p. Before suffixes be-
ginning with r the p- is lost but causes the -r to
become -t. Before suffixes with initial -n the stem
final p- becomes t-.

<u>op-</u>   'to be/do'

<u>orâ-wan</u>   'I did/was'

<u>u-an</u>   'I am/have done'

<u>u-pap</u>   'he will do/be'

<u>u-tat</u>   'we two will do/be'

<u>ut-nat</u>   'we will do/be'

Some of the verbs of this subclass are;

op-   'to be/do'

<u>tap-</u>   'to sit/stay'

<u>kwâp-</u>   'to make'

<u>topkwap-</u>   'to begin'

<u>dâpkwap-</u>   'to compare'

Vowel Dissimilation.

In some single syllable root / stems with a as the
single root / stem vowel, the vowel changes to â when
a suffix or enclitic with an a follows it.

tap-   'to stay/sit'

tâpap   'he will stay/sit'

ga-   'to come'

gâbabot   'they (du.) will come

pa-   'to put'

pâmbap   'he will put it'

3.   THE WORD

The Word is the level between stem and phrase.
There are two word classes in K$_o$mba to be discussed;

1.   The noun

2.   The verb

These differ from each other in the filler class manifesting
the nuclei and in the morphology of their suffixes.

3.1 Nouns

As noted at the root level nouns may be divided into subclasses on the basis of obligatory/optional occurrence or non occurrence of enclitic tagmemes. Subclass one nouns obligitarily take enclitics indicating possessor and number. This subclass covers nouns of two semantic categories;

1. Those indicating kinship or similar relationship.

2. Those indicating such things as body parts.

The structure of subclass one nounsis;

Nn_1 = nucleus + number + possessor

The number tagmeme is manifested by a closed class made up of three forms.

singular -∅

dual -zat

plural -râp

ibâ	-	∅	-	nâ
father	-	sing-		my

'my father'

ibâ	-	zat	-	nâ
father	-	du.	-	my

'my two fathers/uncles'

The possessor indicating enclitics are a closed
class. Note the similarity between these forms and the
corresponding personal pronoun roots. The enclitics
and their formatives are presented in chart 9.

Chart 9, Possessor indicating enclitics.

	Sing.	dl.	pl.
	(â)	(ikŋâ)	(iŋâ)
1st.per.(n)	nâ	nikŋâ	niŋâ
2nd.per.(g/z)	gâ/kâ	zikŋâ	ziŋâ
3rd.per.(ŋ/z)	ŋâ	zikŋâ	ziŋâ

Subclass two nouns optionally take the possessor
indicating enclitic but not the number indicating
enclitics.

The structure of subclass two nouns is;

Nn_2 = Nucleus ± possessor.

The enclitics occurring on nouns can be divided
into,

1. Simple
2. Compound (all of which have as a basic component
a possessor indicator)

Subclass three nouns take only the simple enclitics
(those which do not include as a component a possessor
indicator) listed below.

-ŋandâ/-ŋâ	subject/instrument
-ân/-in/-yân/-gen	locative
-âk/-yâk	limiter
-gât/-kât	benefactive/possessive

Noun roots of subclass one and two take the compound enclitics, all of which have as an obligatory base of their forms a clitic form indicating by whom they are possessed. Noun subclass two members may optionally take the simple clitics or the compound. It is not usual for subclass one nouns to take simple clitics. They regularly occur with compound clitics.

The various sets of compound enclitics which occur with nouns are listed below.

Compound bebefactive/possessive enclitics.

The benefactive/possessive enclitics have two recognizable components.

1. possessor indicator

2. possessive/benefactive morpheme -gât

ibâ	-	naŋ	-	gât
father	-	my	-	ben./poss.

'for my father/my father's'

Note; the process of compounding causes the possessor indicator to be modified from -nâ to -naŋ. There is a similar modification with the other forms.

1st. per.	sing.	-naŋgât
2nd. per.	sing.	-gaŋgât/-kaŋgât
3rd. per.	sing.	-ŋaŋgât
1st. per.	du.	-nikŋaŋgât
2/3rd.per.	du.	-zikŋaŋgât
1st. per.	pl.	-niŋaŋgât
2/3rd. per.	pl.	-ziŋaŋgât

Compound locative enclitics.

The locative enclitics are compounded of two recognizable components.

1.   possessor indicator

2.   locative clitic -ân

mirâ   -   nan

house   -   my/loc.

'to/at my house'

Note, when the possessor indicator -nâ and the locative enclitic -ân come together, it becomes -nan. Similar modifications occur in the other forms.

1st. per.	sing.	-nan
2nd. Per.	sing.	-gan/-kan
3rd. per.	sing.	-ŋan
1st. per.	du.	-nikŋan
2/3rd.per.	du.	-zikŋan
1st. per.	pl.	-niŋan
2/3rd.per.	pl.	-ziŋan

Compound Possessed locative enclitics.

The possessed locative enclitics are compounded of three recognizable components.

1. possessor indicator

2. benefactive/possessive morpheme -gât

3. locative -ren

For example;

<u>ibâ   -   nâŋgâren</u>

father -   ᵻ -my/poss/loc.

'at/to my father/father's place'

Note; when the Possessor indicator -nâ , the ben/poss.

morpheme -gât and the locative -en come together they

become -naŋgâren. Similar modifications occur in other

forms.

1st. per.	sing.	<u>-naŋgâren</u>
2nd. per.	sing.	<u>-gaŋgâren/-kaŋgâren</u>
3rd. per.	sing.	<u>-ŋaŋgâren</u>
1st. per.	du.	<u>-nikŋaŋgâren</u>
2/3rd.per.	du.	<u>-zikŋaŋgâren</u>
1st. per.	pl.	<u>-niŋaŋgâren</u>
2/3rd. per.	pl.	<u>-ziŋaŋgâren</u>

Compound Subject/instrument indicator enclitics.

The subject/instrument indicator enclitics are compounded of two components.

1.   Possessor indicator

2.   Subject/instrument marker

ibâ   —   nandâ

father —   my⁄subj.

'my father (subj)'

Note; When the possessor indicator -nâ and the Subj/Inst. marker -ândâ come together it becomes -nandâ. Similar modifications occur in the other forms.

1st. per.	sing.	-nandâ
2nd. per.	sing.	-gandâ/-kandâ
3rd. per.	sing.	-ŋandâ
1st. per.	du.	-nikŋandâ
2/3rd.per.	du.	-zikŋandâ
1st. per.	pl.	-niŋandâ
2/3rd.per.	pl.	-ziŋandâ

Note; The third person singular enclitic -ŋandâ or its abbreviated form -ŋâ occurs with subclass three noun roots. In these cases however it functions as a simple subject/instrument without its possessor indicator function being in focus.

kât   –   ŋâ   nin – ziŋg – ip

stone –   subj.   eat   –   them   – it did

'the landslide swallowed them up.'

zen   kât –   ŋâ   ku   –   we

they   stone –   inst. strike him– they did

'they hit him with stones.'

Compound Accompaniment Enclitics.

The accompaniment enclitics are compounded of two components;

1. Possessor indicator

2. Accompaniment marker -ot

ambin   -   ŋoot

with   -   his/acc.

'with his wife'

Note; When the possessor indicator -nâ and the accompaniment marker -ot come together it becomes -noot. Similar modifications occur in the other forms.

1st. per.	sing.	-noot
2nd. per.	sing.	-goot/-koot
3rd. per.	sing.	-ŋoot
1st. per.	dů.	-nikŋoot
2/3rd. per.	du.	-zikŋoot
1st. per.	pl.	-niŋoot
2/3rd. per.	pl.	-ziŋoot

Note; the third person singular form may occur with nouns from subclass three functioning as a simple accompaniment marking enclitic without its possessor indicator function being in focus.

too   -   ŋoot

water -   its acc.

'wet'

<u>kârâp   -   ŋoot</u>

fire   -   its acc.

'with heat'

<u>pibâ   -   ŋoot</u>

wind   -   its acc.

'with air/gas'

Compound Limiter Enclitics.

      The limiter clitics are compounded of two components;

1.   Possessor indicator

2.   Specifier -<u>ik</u>

<u>neule   -   ŋik</u>

decoration- his lim.

'just his decoration/beauty'

Note; When the possessor indicator -<u>nâ</u> and the specifier

-<u>ik</u> come together it becomes -<u>nik</u>. Similar modifications

occur in the other forms.

1st. per.   sing.   -<u>nik</u>

2nd. per.   sing.   -<u>ŋik</u>/-<u>kik</u>

3rd. per.   sing.   -<u>ŋik</u>

1st. per.   du.   -<u>nikŋik</u>

2/3rd.per.   du.   -<u>zikŋik</u>

1st. per.   pl.   -<u>niŋik</u>

2/3rd. per.   pl.   -<u>ziŋik</u>

3.2. Verbs

Verbs in Komba may be divided into independent and dependent . ` on the basis of morphological differences and external distribution with the sentence.

⌣.2.1. Independent Verbs.

Independent Verbs are composed of stem and suffixation indicating tense and person and number of the subject of the verb. Optional suffixation may occur indicating customary action in contrast to the punctilliar indicated by ⊦ non-occurrence of such suffixation.

```
                                    tense
Ind.Vb. = +Vb.St.± cust. ✦ person
                                    number
```

Transitive verbs have an object indicator as part of their stem.

Note; The suffixation indicating customary action occurs only with Remote Past, Immediate Past and Remote Future tense suffixes indicating respectively past, present and future customary action. The suffixation indicating customary action occurs contiguous to the stem. The customary action marker is the morpheme -mâ. It has four predictable allomorphs; -marâ before w, -m before e/a, -mâm before b, -mân before d. The forms are presented in chart 10 with the accompanying tense-person-number suffixes.

Chart 10, Customary action suffixes.

	Singular			dual		plural	
	1	2	3	1	2/3	1	2/3
past cust.	-marâwan	-mâin	-mâip	-marâwet	-marâwet	-marâwen	-marâwe
pres.cust	-man	-mat	-map	-met	-mabot	-men	-me
fut.cust.	-mâmbat	-mâmban	-mâmbap	-mândat	-mâmbabot	-mânat	-mâmbi

mundo   ne   -   m⟶   an
tobacco   eat-   cust.-I have
'I smoke'

ne   -   marâ   -   we
eat -   cust. -   they did
'They used to eat it.'

ândi - mâm   -   bap
live - cust. -   he will
'He will be living.'

ândi   -   mân - dat
live   -   cust- we two will
'We two will be living.'

The suffixes on Independent verbs have components
indicating tense and person and number of the subject
of the verb. In some suffix forms these components can
be isolated and identified but in other forms the compon-
ents are fused and overlap and so cannot be separated.
As the components cannot be consistently separated we
handle them as units, although taking note of obvious
components that occur fairly regularly.

<u>gâsu   -   wan</u>

hold it-   I did

'I held it'

The suffix -<u>wan</u> has three identifiable components;

1. -<u>w</u> past tense, -<u>a</u> singular, -<u>n</u> first person.

<u>gâsu   -   e</u>

hold it-   they have

'They have held it.'

With the suffix -<u>e</u> it is not possible to separate and
identify components. We can make the observation that in
Immediate Past tense forms , the tense indicator is -∅.
The morpheme e is in some forms a non-singular indicator.
The compound suffixes are presented in chart 11. For purposes
of comparison the heteropersonal (change of subject) dependent
verb suffix set is included.

Chart 11.   Compound tense, person, number verb suffixes.

	Singular			Dual		Plural	
	1st.per	2nd.per.	3rd.per	1st.per.	2/3rd.per.	1st.per.	2/3rdper
rem.past	-wan	-in	-ip	-wet	-wet	-wen	-we
imm.past	-an	-at	-ap	-et	-et	-en	-e
hetero. (ch.of sub.)	-a/andâ	-na/nandâ	-i	-itâ	-itâ	-indâ	-ne/netâ
imperative	-bâ	-∅/nan	-ik	-râ	-it	-nâ	-nek
imm.fut.	-bâman	-bâmat	-bâmap	-râmet	-râmabot	-nâmen	-nâme
rem.fut.	-bat	-ban	-bap	-rat	-babot	-nat	-bi
readiness	-bam	-bam	-bam	-ram	-ram	-nam	-nam
con.to fact	-bam	-bat	-bap	-bet	-babot	-bem	-be
permission		-boot			-baroŋ		-bioŋ

96

     With the suffix chart before us we note the obvious
formatives of the compound suffixes.

     Remote past is used of action which occur
yesterday or previous. Obvious formatives in the
remote past suffixes are;

- w remote past marker

- a singular

- e non-singular

- n 1st.Pers. singular and plural

-p 3rd.pers. singular

- ∅ 2/3rd.pers. plural

- t 1st.pers. dual. In this particular tense 2/3rd
person is indicated by the same form.
Note; In the second and thrid person singular forms
-i functions as both tense and singular number indicator.

     Immediate past is used of action now completed or
which occurred as far in the past as last night.
Obvious formatives are;

-∅   immediate past marker

-a   singular

-e   non-singular

-n   first person singular and plural

-t   first person dual

-t   second person singular

-p   third person singular

-abot 2/3rd. person dual

-ø̸   2/3rd. person plural

    Immediate Future is used of action about to occur
(with several hours time). Many of the forms are a
compound of the future/number markers -bâ, -râ, -nâ,
and immediate past forms. Some obvious formatives are;

-bâ   future/singular marker

-râ   future/dual marker

-nâ   future/plural marker

-m   immediate future

-a   singular

-e   non-singular

-n   first person singular and plural

-t   second person singular

-p   third person singular

-t   first person dual

-abot   2/3rd. person dual

ø̸   2/3rd. person plural

Imperative is used of action that should take place in the immediate future, Komba has forms for all persons. For example;

<u>qa   -   ik</u>

come -   he/Imp.

'He must/should come.'

<u>nim - bâ</u>

eat - I/Imp.

'I must eat it.'

The few obvious formatives are;

-∅   imperative marker

-bâ   future/singular marker

-râ   future/dual marker

-nâ   future/plural marker

-k   third person singular and plural

Note; In contrast to immediate future suffixes, in imperative suffixes the future/number markers -bâ, -râ, -nâ occur only in first person forms so in fact mark first person as well as future/ number.

Remote future is used of action that will/may occur in several hours or any later time. Obvious formatives of the remote future suffixes are;

-bâ   future/singular/first person marker

-râ   future/dual/first person marker

-nâ   future/plural/first person marker

-t   first person singular,dual and plural

-n   second person singular

-p   third person singular

-i   2/3rd. person plural

-abot 2/3rd. person dual

Readiness is used to express readiness or intention to act. The readiness suffixes do not indicate the person of the subject, but do indicate the number.

Readiness verb forms function as both independent and dependent verbs. When functioning as an independent verb, there must be a form such as a personal pronoun filling the subject slot of the clause/sentence to indicate the person of the subject.

nâ	Lae	âi	-	bam
I	Lae	go	-	sing. readiness

'I am ready to go to Lae.'

When functioning as a homopersonal dependent verb the readiness form is followed by an independent verb form whose suffixation indicates the subject and tense of both verb forms. The two forms must agree in number.

bâu	lu	-	nam	ar	-	ie
pig	carry	-	pl.read.	go-they have		

'They have gone to carry a pig.'

The obvious formatives of the readiness suffixes are;

-bâ   future/single marker

-ra   future/dual marker

-nâ   future/plural marker

-am   readiness indicator

Permission forms are used in greetings and farewells. For example, passing on the path one may use the greeting;

ga - m âi - bot

come = homo go - you permis.

'You may come and go.'

On departing from a group of people the farewell may be;

tap - ioŋ

stay - you(pl.) permis.

'You may all stay'

As permission forms are used only in address the number of forms is limited to three; second person singular, second person dual and second person plural. The formatives are;

-bâ   future marker

-o   permission indicator

-t   singular (second person)

-ŋ   non-singular (second person)

Note; The future marker -bâ occurs in dual and plural forms as well as singular. The following morph-phonemic rules apply. â+o=oo, â+a=a, â+i=i.

Contrary to fact suffixes indicate action that may
occur, or may have occurred, if not evaded. The Contrary
to fact marker -b should not be confused with the future
marker -bâ or its allo-formatives -râ or nâ. Contrary
to fact forms do not indicate time. Time is indicated
by a filler of the time tagmeme of the clause, or by
context such as the tense of the previous independent
verb or the next independent verb.

yatâ   sâ   - bəp   sâi ko   sarâ   o - pap
like that speak - he will if then falsehood be - it cont.to fact
'If he should/shall say that, it would/will be false.'

zâk kamân   - ŋan   ta   - ap   sâi ko   mɔm - bap
he   village - his loc. stay - he has if   then die - he cont.to fact
'If he had stayed in his village he would have died.'

The obvious formatives of the contrary to fact
suffixes are;

-b   Contrary to fact marker.

-a   singular

-e   non-singular

-m   first person singular and plural

-t   second person singular

-t   first person dual

-abot 2/3rd. person dual

-∅   2/3rd. person plural

Noting that three of the Contrary to fact suffix
forms are identical with remote future forms we should
take note of an interesting feature of Komba. Verb
roots which have as their only vowel either of the mid
vowels e or o are subject to vowel dissimilation in
certain suffix enviroments. When the roots are followed
by a suffix which has as its first or only vowel e or â
the root vowel changes to its corresponding front or
back high vowel. The root and suffix vowels need not
be contiguous.

<u>ne</u> 'to eat it'

<u>nem</u>   - <u>bâ</u>   becomes   <u>nimbâ</u>

eat it - I imp.   'I must eat it'

<u>ne</u>   - <u>et</u>   becomes <u>niet</u>

eat it- we two imm.past   'We two have eaten it.'

On comparing the third person singular forms of the
contrary to fact and of the remote future tense of the
verb to eat which have identical suffixation we find
the vowel perturbation to be seemingly inconsistent.

nem   -   bap   becomes   nembap

eat it   -   he/cont. to fact

'He might eat it.'

nem   -   bap   becomes   nimbap

eat it - he/rem. fut.

'He will eat it.'

However looking closely at the different formatives
of the suffixes we see that the contrary to fact suffix
is composed of a contrary to fact marker -b and the
singular indicator -a and thr third person indicator -p.

The remote suffix formatives in contrast are,
-bâ future marker and -ap third person singular indicator.
In remote future suffixes (as in imperative, immediate
future, readiness and permission forms) the â of the
future marker formative -bâ (or its allo formatives
-râ and -nâ) cause the verb root vowel to change even
though the â itself may be lost with the addition of
other suffix formatives.

nem   – bâ   – ap   becomes   nimbap

eat it – will –   he (Remote Future)

'He will eat it.'

nem – b   – ap   becomes   nembap

eat it– might – he   (Cont. to fact)

'He might eat it.'

To illustrate how the verb root vowel dissimilation
gives contrast between remote future and Contrary to
fact verb forms the forms for two verbs are presented in
chart 12.

Chart 12.   Remote future and contrary to fact forms.

rem.future forms of the transitive verb ne 'to eat it'

Singular			dual		plural	
1st.	2nd.	3rd.	1st.	2/3rd.	1st.	2/3rd.
nimbat	nimban	nimbap	nindat	nimbabot	ninat	nimbi

Contrary to fact forms of transitive verb ne 'to eat it.

| nembam | nembat | nembap | nimbet | nembabot | nimbem | nimbe |

rem. future forms of intransitive verb op to be/do

| upap | upan | upap | utet | upabot | utnat | upi |

Contrary to fact forms of intransitive verb op to be/do

| opam | opat | opap | upet | opabot | upem | upe |

Verbs roots with other vowels are not subject to vowel
dissimilation. For example the intransitive verb <u>sâ</u> 'to speak'

Remote Future forms of the intransitive verb <u>sâ</u> 'to speak'

sâbat   sâban   sâbap   sârat   sâbabot   sânat   sâbi

Contrary to fact forms of the intransitive verb <u>sâ</u> 'to speak'

sâbam   sâbat   sâbap   sâbet   sâbabot   sâbem   sâbe

We note regarding the Contrary to fact forms of this and other
irregular subclass one verbs, that the first person singular form

   is identical to the singular readiness form. The second
person singular form is identical to the first person singular
Remote future form. The third person singular form is identical
to the third person singular Remote future form. The second/
third person dual form is identical to the second/third person
dual remote future form. With such identical forms occurring
it is the context that indicates the correct meaning.

3.2.2   Dependent Verbs

Dependent verbs do not take suffixation indic-
ating tense. They are dependent on a /the following
verb for such indicators.

Dependent verbs do take suffixation indicating whether
the subject is identical (homopersonal) or different
(heteropersonal) to that of the following verb.
Dependent verbs may optionally take mode suffixation,
indicating prolonged action. If the optional mode
tagmeme is not filled the action is punctilliar. On
the basis of differing suffix morphology dependent
verbs may be divided into two subtypes.

.   Dependent homopersonal (same subject as following
verb)

The structure of this sub type is;

Dependent homopersonal Vb.=+nucleus + identity ± mode
± comp. action.

The fillers of the nucleus tagmeme are the same as
those of the independent verbs. The identity tagmeme is
           manifested by the morpheme -m following
vowels and ∅ following consonants.

The mode tagmeme indicating prolonged action is
manifested by the mode tagmeme -ma.

âi - m	tak - ip
go - homo.	arrive - he did

'He went and arrived.'

âi - m - ma - ko	tak - ip
ĝo - homo. - mode- comp.	arrive- he did

'He continued on and then arrived.'

Note; The completed action marker -ko generallu follows
the mode tagmeme when it occurs. The allomorph -ŋâ
does not occur with the mode tagmeme.

Either of the completed action morphemes -ŋâ or -ko
may optionally fill the completed action action tagmeme
when the mode tagmeme is not filled.

The Independent verb with readiness suffixation
may also function as a dependent homopersonal verb.
In this case the fillers of the nucleus are the same,
but the identity tagmeme is filled by one of the three
readiness suffix forms -bam singular, -ram dual, or
-nam plural.

The mode tagmeme does not occur with the Readiness forms,

kât mim - bam	ari - ap
stone get - readiness/sing.	go - he has

'He has gone to get cash.'

Dependent heteropersonal Verbs (different subject from following verb) have the following structure. Dep.Hetero.Vb. =+ nucleus + identity (person and number) ± mode ± completed action.

The nucleus tagmeme has the same group of fillers as that for independent verbs. The identity tagmeme is manifested by a suffix form from the following set;

singular			dual		plural	
1st.per.	2nd.per.	3rd.per	1st. per.	2/3rd.per.	1st.per.	2/3rd.per.
-a/-andâ	-∅/-nandâ	-i	-itâ	-itâ	-indâ	-ne/netâ

These suffixes indicate the person and number of the present subject and indicate that the subject is changing. These are fused forms and it is difficult to identify any formatives. We should note however that some of the forms are similar to the imperative suffix set of the independent verb.

The mode tagmeme is filled by the mode morpheme -ma, indicating prolonged action. The completed action tagmeme is filled by the completed action morpheme -ko.
Note; That the completed action morpheme -nâ does not occur on heteropersonal forms. It is limited to occurring on homopersonal forms.

nalem   nei   -ma   - ko   âkon - ziɡ   -   ap

food   eat - mode   comp.   dislike- him   -   it has

'He prolonged eating the food then dislike for it came upon him.'

uman   zei   -   ma   -   ko   aŋsâ   -   ip

sleep   lie - mode   -   comp.   morning   -   it became

'He prolonged his sleep until daybreak.'

4. · THE PHRASE

Phrases constitute a level between the levels of
word and clause. Phrases are made up of tagmemes
generally manifested by fillers from lower levels and
they in turn generally manifest tagmemes on the clause
level.

Phrases in Komba fall into five general divisions;

1. Verbal Phrases which contain head tagmemes
generally manifested by verbal forms.

2. Noun Phrases which contain head tagmemes generally
manifested by nominative forms such as nouns and pronouns.

3. Adjective . Phrase which contains a head tagmeme
generally manifested by an adjective form.

4. Comparison Phrase with a complement and a
comparative.

5. Axis Relator Phrases which consist of an axis tagmeme
generally filled by a nominative form and a
relator tagmeme which is generally manifested by a
simple or compound enclitic form.

4.1   Verbal Phrases

Verbal Phrases generally have two tagmemes, the first of which indicates the action and the second giving indication of the manner of action and the person and number of the actor and the object (if any) and tense.

Verbal Phrases fill the predicate tagmeme on the clause level.

4.1.1   Modified Verb Phrase

The modified verb Phrase fills the predicate
tagmeme on the clause level. The structure of the
modified verb phrase is;

Mod.Vb.Ph. = ± mod.: Adv.   ± Neg.: mân_ +H: Vb.
                      Cpsn.Ph.   Vb.P$_h$.
                      Adj.

The optional modifier tagmeme is filled by an
adverb, adjective or comparison phrase. The optional
tagmeme is filled by the negative form mân. The head
tagmeme is filled by a verb ' form or a verb phrase.

Ŧok   ari   -   ap

still go   -   it has

'It has still been going' (It has gone altogether)

Kek   mân tak   -   ip

quickly neg. arrive - he did

'He did not arrive quickly.'

Dâŋ   mân tuu   -   gip

carefully/well neg. make it - he did

'He did not make it carefully.'

Bâzagât yatâ   sâlâpko   -   ip

ten   like that count it   -   he did

'He counted about ten.'

patâ mân op   -   ŋâ

big   neg. be   - homo.comp. action

'not being big.'

4.1.2 Motion Verb Phrase

The motion verb phrase may take the same modifiers as the modified verb phrase but it has two extra optional distinguishing tagmemes and the list of fillers of the head tagmeme is limited to motion verbs or constructions which include a motion verb. The motion verb phrase fills the predicate tagmeme at the clause level. The structure of the phrase is;

Mot.Vb.Ph. = ± (± motion aux.:<u>ba</u> + loc: Nn.)
                                        Prn.
                                        loc ARP
                                        Origin ARP
                                        N.Ph.

+H: mod.Vb.Ph. (with head filled by motion vb. form)

Ba   zi   kopqâ   -   ip
mot.aux. here come up -   he did
'Moving, he came up here.'

Ba   bar   -   in kek   zâi   -   we
mot.aux. forrest- loc. quickly go up -   they did
'Moving, they quickly went up to the jungle.'

Zor - en   âi   -   we
there- loc. go   -   they did
'They went there.'

Kamân   -   ân   qâbâ   qa   -   wen
village - loc. from   came - we did
'We came from the village.'

Note; The auxilliary motion morpheme ba only occurs
in phrases with the six motion verbs;

qa   'come'   qe   'come down'

kopqa   'come up'   âi   'go'

qei   'go down'   zâi   'go up'

4.1.3   Auxilliary Verb Phrase

The auxilliary verb phrase has the structure;

Aux.Vb.Ph. = + complement + Aux.Pred.

Nouns and adjectives and Axis Relator Phrases fill the complement tagmeme and a limited number of transitive/intransitive verbs manifest the auxilliary predicate tagmeme.

The verbs most commonly occurring in the auxilliary predicate tagmeme are;

<u>op</u>   'be/do'

<u>kwâp</u> 'make/do'

<u>me</u>   'get/make'

Intransitive constructions are generally of a stative type with a form of the verb <u>op</u> 'to be' manifesting the auxilliary predicate tagmeme.

Bâliŋ   u   -   ap

bad   be -   it has

'It is no good.'

Pateŋ   u - an

cold   be - I have

'I am cold.'

Gulip   u   -   ap

disappearance be - it has

'It has disappeared.'

Buŋ   u   -   ap

negative/without   be -   it has

'There is none remaining.'

    Transitive forms are generally distinguishable
by the occurrence of object markers.

Buku   ot -   niŋ   -   ap

cousin   do/be- to us   -   he has

'He was friendly to us.'

Kembu ot - niŋâ   -   bap

elder be/do - to us -   he will

'He will be in charge over us.'

Keŋqât   min - ziŋ - ip

fear   get - them - he did

'He made them afraid.'

Kâtik -   ŋan   kwat - niŋâ   -   map

strong - loc   make -   us   - je does

'He makes us strong.'

4.1.4 Completion Verb Phrase

The Completion Verb Phrase indicates that the
action is done thoroughly or completely.

<u>Me   - m   nâŋgâ   -   we</u>
get - homo. completely - they did
'They took them all.'

The structure of the phrase is;

comp.Vb.Ph.=+Head: dep.homo.Vb. + aux.Pred. : form of Vb.
                                               <u>naŋgâ</u>
                                               <u>kwâkâ</u>
                                               <u>kwâtâte</u>
                                               <u>biraŋ</u>

The list of fillers of the auxilliary predicate
tagmeme is limited to forms of the four completion
indicating auxilliary verbs; <u>naŋgâ-</u>, <u>kwâkâ-</u>, <u>kwâtâte-</u>
and <u>biraŋ-</u> . The first three being interchangable
but the other restricted in usage. It is most commonly
used when the head tagmeme is filled by the verb
<u>nâŋgâ</u> 'to hear/understand/think.'

<u>nâŋgâ   - m biraŋ   -   nek</u>
think   - homo. completely - you imp.
'Think about it carefully.'

tuu-m kwâk-ap

tuu-m kwâtâti-ap   } make-homo. completely-he has

tuu-m naŋq-ap

'He has completed making it.'

4.1.5   Continuous Action Verb Phrase

The Continuous Action Verb Phrase fills the head tagmeme of the modified verb Phrase and the predicate tagmeme on the clause level. The phrase conveys the meaning of continuous action. The Continuous Action may be in remote past, immediate past, imperative or remote future tense. The head tagmeme is filled by a dependent homopersonal verb form. The auxilliary predicate tagmeme is filled by an independent or dependent form of one of the four stative type verbs;

tap- 'sit/stay',   ze- 'recline/stay'

kin- 'stand/stay'   ândi 'live/stay'

Structure of the phrase is;

cont.act.Vb.Ph.= +Head:dep.homo.Vb. + aux.pred.

tap- 'sit'
zem- 'recline'
kin 'stand'
ândi 'live'

In such construction the two components are inseparable. The dependent homopersonal form in the head tagmeme connot take the otherwise   optional mode and completed action morphemes.

<u>Ko   -   m   ta   -   ap</u>

strike- homo stay/sit- he has

'He is striking it.'

<u>Ga   -   m   kin   -   zap</u>

come - homo.stay/stand- he has

'He is coming.'

<u>Ze   -   m t   -   e</u>

recline-homo. stay/sit - you have

'You are feclining'

<u>Nâŋgâ-   m   tap   -   ∅</u>

hear - homo.   sit/stay - homo.

'He stays hearing it.'

<u>Tuu   -   m   tâ   -   i</u>

make it - homo. sit/stay- hetero.

'He stays making it.'

 When the auxilliary ' predicate tagmeme is man-
ifested by a dependent verb form, indication as to the
action being past, present or future continuous action
depends on the next independent verb.

Note: When the head tagmeme is manifested by one of
the four stative type verbs, the auxilliary predicate
is manifested by a form of the verb <u>tap</u> 'sit/stay'.
Forms of this verb may fill both tagmemes in a
construction.

<u>zi</u> <u>tap - ø</u> <u>ta - an</u>
this sit/stay-homo sit/stay - I have
'I am staying here.'

4.1.6 Inadequate Achievement Verb Phrase

The inadequate achievement verb phrase manifests the head tagmeme of the modified verb phrase and the predicate tagmeme on the clause level.

The inadequate achievement verb phrase indicates that the verb stem action indicated by the filler of the head tagmeme is judged as inadequately done. The structure of the phrase is;

inad.achiev.Vb.Ph. =± H:homo.Vb. + aux. Pred.:tâpâku-

Nep -ŋâ   tuu - m   tâpâku   -   men
work-his   make it- homo. inadequately - we do it
'We do his work inadequately.'

Den zo sâ   - m   tâpâku   -   an
talk that speak - homo.   inadequate   - I have
'I spoke that incorrectly.'

Independent forms of tâpâku may occur on their own in conversation when the situation and context make the referent obvious.

tâpâku   -   wan
inadequate -   I did
'I bungled it.'

4.1.7 Adequate Achievement Verb Phrase

The Adequate Achievement verb phrase manifests the head tagmeme of the modified verb phrase and the predicate tagmeme on the clause level.

The adequate achievement verb phrase indicates that the verb stem action indicated by the filler of the head tagmeme is judged as being well done.
The structure of the phrase is;
ad.achiev.Vb Ph. = ± H.: homo.Vb. + aux.Pred. angemgu-

Tuu - .m	angemgu	-	at
make it - homo	well	-	you have

'You made it well.'

Sobi - m	angemgu	-	ban
carve/peel - homo.	well	-	you will

'You will carve it well.'

Forms of angemgu are found in conversation on their own when the situation and context make the reference obvious.

Angemgu	-	ap
do well	-	he has

'He has done it well.'

4.1.8   Unsuccessful Endeavour Verb Phrase

The unsuccessful endeavour verb phrase manifests the head tagmeme of the modified verb phrase and the predicate tagmeme on the clause level. The structure of the phrase is;

unsucc.end.Vb.Ph. = ±H; homo.Vb. +aux.Pred.: <u>osi-</u>

The Head tagmeme is filled by a dependent homopersonal verb form.

The aux. Pred. tagmeme is filled by a form of the verb osi.

<u>Tâmbet</u>	–	nâŋgo –	m	<u>osi</u>	–	maɒ
destroy	–	us	– homo.	try unsuccessfully	–	he does

'He tries unsuccessfully to destroy us.'

<u>Kubik</u>	–	∅	<u>osi</u>	–	wan
correct/fix	–	homo.	try unsuccessfully	–	I did

'I tried unsuccessfully to fix it.'

Forms of <u>osi</u>-are found in conversation on their own when the situation and context makes the referent obvious.

<u>Osi</u>	–	an
try unsuccessfully	–	I have

'I tried unsuccessfully to do it.'

4.1.9 Locative Verb Phrase

The locative verb phrase is marked by it having two co-ordinate head tagmemes. The fillers of both tagmemes carry stem meaning.

The locative verb phrase fills the predicate tagmeme on the clause level. The structure of the phrase is;

loc.Vb.Ph.= H_1 :mot.Vb.stem + H_2:dep./indep.Vb. form

The head$_1$ tagmeme is filled by a verb stem (without homopersonal or heteropersonal suffixation) functioning as a dependent homopersonal verb. The stem is that of one of the six motion verbs,

âi-	'go'	ga-	'come'	gei-	'go down'
zâi-	'go up'	ge-	'come down'	kopga-	'come up'

The head$_2$ tagmeme is filled by an independent or dependent verb form. The most common fillers are forms of the stative type verbs;

tap-	'sit/stay'	kin-	'stand/stay'
ze-	'recline/stay'	ândi-	'live/stay'

Ikâ	âi	ta	-	ap
where	go	sit/stay-		he has

'Where has he gone to stay?'

<u>Kamân</u>   <u>pat - in zâi</u>   <u>ândi   - ap</u>

village   big- - loc go up   live/stay- he has

'He has gone to stay/live up at the big village/town.'

Note; In this verb phrase there is no indication of
the time that the motion occurs other than that it
precedes the staying/living (or other filler of the H_2

tagmeme.).

4.1.10 Readiness/Intention Verb Phrase

The readiness/intention verb phrase indicates readiness/
intention to immediate action. It fills the predicate
tagmeme on the clause level. The phrase has this
structure;

Readiness/intention Vb.Ph.= $+H_1$:readiness Vb.form +
H_2 :Vb./Vb.Ph.

The $head_1$ tagmeme is manifested by any verb with one of
the three suffixes indicating readiness. In this case
the readiness form functions as a depend⌢ent homo-
personal verb. The $head_2$ tagmeme is generally filled
by a form of the stative type verb op- 'to be/do,
or a motion verb or a verb Phrase.

When number is indicated by the filler of the $head_2$
tagmeme this is in concord with the number indicated
by the filler of the $head_1$ tagmeme.

âi- bam   u - an
go - ready (sing) be - I have
'I am ready to go.'

Lae   âi - ram   q - e
Lae   go   -ready   come - they have
'They have come, ready to go to Lae.'

zuu   zerâ - nam   âi - we
animal shoot - ready go - they did
'They went, ready to shoot bush animals.'

4.2. Noun Phrases

4.2.1 Attributive Noun Phrases

The attributive noun phrase fills the identification tagmeme of the apposition noun phrase and the head tagmeme of the qualified noun phrase as well as subject, object instrument, and locative tagmemes on the clause level.

The attributive noun phrase is made up of a head tagmeme and an attributive tagmeme. The fillers of the head and attributive tagmemes are in a variety of semantic relationships to each other. Generally the filler of the attributive tagmeme qualifies the filler of the head tagmeme. When a noun denoting a body part or location occurs in the attributive tagmeme its relation to the noun filling the head tagmeme is one of inclusion. That is, the noun filling the head is part of the noun filling the attributive tagmeme.

Attrib.Nn.Ph.= ± Attribute + Head
The optional ᴗ attributive tagmeme is filled by a noun or an attributive noun phrase. The obligatory head tagmeme is filled by a noun or any Axis Relator Phrase which has the axis filled by a noun.

kâuk   sâmot   -   ŋâ

head   hair   -   his

'His hair'

sâlâp   pakit   -   ŋâ

finger   cover   -   his

'his finger nails'

mirâ   siŋit   -   ŋâ

house   bones   -   its

'house frame'

mundo   ekap

tobacco   wrapping

'cigarette paper'

nak   in   -   ŋâ

tree   leaf -   its

'tree leaf'

ekap   namâ   pum   -   ŋâ

leaf (paper) house ridge-   its

'the ridge of the schoolhouse roof'

sarâ den

false talk

'lies'

<u>kât</u>   <u>mi - miŋ</u>

stone(cash) get - get

'collection of money.'

4.2.2   Qualified Noun Phrase

The qualified noun phrase fills the identification tagmeme of the apposition noun phrase and the subject and object tagmemes on the clause level. The structure of the phrase is;

Qual.Nn.Ph.= ± possessor + Head ± qualifier$_1$ ± qualifier$_2$

The optional possessor tagmeme is filled by a noun, pronoun, poss./ben ARP or loc. ARP. The obligatory head tagmeme is filled by a noun, attributive noun phrase or demonstrative pronoun. The optional qualifier one tagmeme is filled by an adjective. The optional qualifier two tagmeme is filled by a numeral or indefinite demonstrative pronoun such as ŋâi'a/another' or nâmbutŋâ 'other' or torenŋâ 'part' or a quantitive adjective such as doŋbep 'many' or bituk 'few'.

zeŋ - ŋâ - ren   kopi   nak   doŋbep
you - pos. - loc.   coffee   tree   many
'You have many coffee trees.'

ninâ   bâu   gwamŋâ
my own pig   young
'my young pig'

<u>wâu</u>   <u>sumun</u>   <u>ŋâi</u>

dog   dark   a/another

'a black dog'

<u>ziiŋâ</u>   <u>nabo</u>   <u>patâ</u>   <u>nâmbutŋâ</u>

their own yam   big   some

'some of their own large yams.'

4.2.3 Apposition Noun Phrase

The apposition noun phrase is a common basic
phrase type of Komba. It has two obligatory tagmemes.
One an identification tagmeme and the other a head
tagmeme. The phrase fills the subject and object
tagmemes on the clause level.

App.Nn.Ph. = +identification + Head
The identification tagmeme is filled by a noun, qual.
noun phrase, attributive noun phrase, clause or sentence.
The head tagmeme is filled by a personal pronoun or a
form of either of the demonstrative pronouns   zi
'this' or zo 'that' or any axis relator phrase that has
a personal pronoun form or either of these demonstrative
pronouns filling the axis tagmeme.

Yaban zâk - nâ
Yaban   he - subj.
'Yaban'

nii zi ga âbongo - ip narâk zor - en

bird here come break   - it did time   that - loc.
'that time when the plane came here and crashed.'

too nambut   zen - gâr - en
water other side they - poss.- loc.
'with those on the other side of the river.'

ambân   zeŋ   -   ĝât
female   they - poss./ben.
'women's (for women)

a   mukan   ĝâ - ip   zâk   -   ŋâ
male yesterday come- he did he   -   subj.
'The man who came yesterday.'

mirâ siŋit   zo
house bones   that
'that house frame.'

a   amban   doŋbep zo   zeŋ
male female   many   those they
'those many people'

4.2.4   Accompaniment Noun Phrase

The accompaniment noun phrase fills the head
tagmeme of the apposition noun phrase and the
accompaniment tagmeme on the clause level. The
accompaniment noun phrase is made up of two obligatory
tagmemes; a head and an accompaniment.

Acc.Nn.Ph. = + Head + accompaniment
The head tagmeme is filled by a noun, pronoun,
coordinate No.Ph. or apposition noun phrase. The
accompaniment tagmeme is filled by the free form sot
'and/with'.

zâk sot

him with

'with him'

zo sot

that with

'with that'

nen sot

us with

'with us'

Yabaŋ zâk sot

Yabaŋ him with

'with Yabaŋ'

<u>Tamaenu</u>   <u>sot</u>   <u>Mebos</u>   <u>zet</u>   <u>sot</u>

Tamaenu   and   Mebos   they two   with

'with Tamaenu and Mebos'

<u>Indagen</u>   <u>zen</u>   <u>sot</u>

Indagen   them   with

'with Indagen people'

4.2.5   Coordinate Noun Phrase

The coordinate noun phrase fills the head tagmeme of the apposition noun phrase and the head tagmeme of the accompaniment noun phrase and the subject, object, time and location tagmemes on the clause level. The phrase is made up of from two to five coordinate heads with optional accompaniment linkage.

Coord.Nn.Ph. = +$Head_1$ + ($\pm$ accompaniment + Head)^3

The head tagmemes are filled by nouns, pronouns, axis relator phrases, attributive noun phrase, qualified noun phrase, apposition noun phrases or clauses. The accompaniment tagmemes are filled by the free form sot 'and/with'. Often the accompaniment tagmeme is filled only between the first two head tagmemes.

Atâ	- nâ	sot	nâ	net
elder brother-	my	and	I	we two

'I and my elder brother.'

katep	mâik	sot	mam -	ŋaŋ -	ŋât	nan -	ŋâ
child	small	and	aunt -	his -	poss.	son -	her

'the small child and his aunt's son.'

nabo kârep sot kalemun ariknâ kera maiawa waru
yam   long   and cucumber seed   cabbage bean pumpkin
`a long yam and cucumber seed and cabbage, beans and pumpkin´

zeŋ   - ŋâr - en sot neŋ - ŋâr - en
you/they- poss. - loc. and we/us - poss. - loc.
`with/to/at you/them and with/to/at us´

narâk zor - en sot irabot zi
time   that - loc. and now   this
`at that time and at this time now.´

4.3   Adjective Phrase

The adjective phrase fills the qualifier 1 tagmeme
of the qualified noun phrase. The phrase is made up
of an obligatory head tagmeme and two optional in-
tensifier tagmemes.

Adjective Ph. $=+$Head $\pm$ intensifier$_1$ $\pm$ intensifier$_2$

The obligatory head tagmeme is filled by an
adjective. The first intensifier tagmeme is filled
by a small group of adjectives which include;

<u>patâ</u>   'big'   <u>mâiktârâ</u>   'small'

<u>imbaŋâ</u>   'mighty'

The second intensifier tagmeme is filled by the form
<u>ŋâi</u> 'a/another'. The fillers of the intensifier
tagmemes forego their usual meaning, functioning rather
as intensifiers of the meaning of the filler of the
head tagmeme.

<u>ŋilip</u>   <u>patâ</u>

large   big

'very large'

<u>kârep</u>   <u>patâ</u>

long/tall big

'very long/tall'

<u>doŋbep</u>   <u>patâ</u>   <u>ŋâi</u>

many   big   another

'very very many'

<u>yâmbâtŋâ</u>   <u>ŋâi</u>

heavy/difficult   another

'very heavy/difficult'

<u>patâ</u>   <u>ŋâi</u>

big another

'very big'

<u>mâiktârâ</u>   <u>ŋâi</u>

small another

'very small'

<u>mârâtŋâ</u>   <u>ŋâi</u>

unusual another

'very unusual'

    The size/quantity type fillers of the intensifier
1 tagmeme are generally limited to co-occurrence with
size/quantity type adjectives filling the head tagmeme.
The intensifier 2 filler <u>ŋâi</u> has no such restriction.

4.4.0   Comparison Phrase

The comparison phrase fills the manner tagmeme on
the clause level. The optional complement tagmeme of
the phrase is filled by a noun, personal pronoun,
demonstrative or interrogative pronoun, numeral,
adjective qualified Nn. Ph.,   A.R.P or a
clause. The obligatory comparison tagmeme is filled
by the free form comparitives <u>itâ</u> 'like this,' or
<u>yatâ</u> 'like that', the latter being by far the most
common filler. Alternatively the comparison tagmeme
is filled by a specifier or limiter axis relator
phrase which has one of the comparatives filling
its axis tagmeme.

Comparison phrase = ± Complement + Comparison

<u>bâu</u>   <u>yatâ</u>

pig   like that

'like a pig'

<u>gâ</u>   <u>yatâ</u>

you like that

'as with you'

<u>a</u>   <u>zo</u>   <u>yatâ</u>

man that like that

'as with that man'

<u>zi</u>   <u>itâ</u>

this like this

'like this'

dap   yatâ

what   like that

'how'

kimembut   yatâ

four   like that

'about four'

yat - ik

like that - specifically

'specifically like that'

it   -   ig -   âk

like this - spec. - lim.

'just specifically like this'

4.5.0 Axis Relator Phrase

Axis relator phrases are of various types and they
vary in distribution on the clause level. All axis
relator phrases in Komba have the structure;

ARP.= + Axis + Relator

The axis tagmeme is generally filled by a noun, pronoun,
noun phrase or axis relator phrase, but may be filled
by a clause or sentence. The relator tagmeme is most
commonly filled by an enclitic. The various types of
axis relator phrases are distinguishable from each other
by the differing enclitic sets/forms which fill the
relator tagmeme as well as differing distribution and
lists of fillers of the axis tagmeme.

Axis Relator Phrase = + Axis : Noun   + Relator: enclitic
                               Pronoun   (simple or
                               Noun Phrase   compound)
                               ARP   free form
                               Adjective
                               Clause
                               Sentence

4.5.1   Possessor Marking Axis Relator Phrase

The possessor marking axis relator phrase fills the tagmemes of the various Noun Phrases, the subject, indirect object, and object tagmemes on the clause level.

The axis tagmeme is filled by subclass one and two nouns. The relator tagmeme is filled by an enclitic of the set indicating the person and number of the possessor of the item manifesting the axis tagmeme. When the axis tagmeme is filled by a subclass one noun root/stem, the relator tagmeme is filled by an enclitic with an extra component indicating the number of the filler of the axis tagmeme.

mirâ   -gâ

house   - your

'Yo r house'

nep   - ŋâ

garden/work - his/hers

'his/her garden'

ibâ   - ∅ - nâ

father   - sing.- my

'my father'

ibâ - zat   - nâ

father- dl. - my

'my two fathers/ uncles'

<u>ibâ - râp - nâ</u>

father- pl. - my

'my fathers/uncles'

    The forms of the poesessor marking enclitics are the basic components for all other compound enclitic sets. All compound enclitic sets have as a basic component a marker indicating the person and number of the item filling the axis tagmeme.

<u>kamân - nan</u>

village - my loc. (locative ARP.)

'at/to my village'

<u>ibâ -nan - gâr - en</u>

father- my - poss. - loc. (poss. locative ARP)

'at/to my father's place'

<u>ibâ - nan - gât</u>

father- my - poss₄ (poss./ben. ARP)

'my father's (for my father)

<u>ibâ - nandâ</u>

father - my Subj. (Subj. ARP.)

'My father'

<u>ibâ - noot</u>

father - my with (accompaniment ARP)

'with my father'

4.5.2   Possessive/Benefactive Axis Relator Phrase

These axis relator phrases identify the owner/benefactee.

The poss./ben. axis relator phrase fills the head tagmemes

of the attributive possessor tagmeme of the qualified noun

phrase.

The axis tagmeme of the possessive/benefactive axis

relator phrase is filled by a subclass one or two

noun or a regular pronoun from or an attributive or

qualified noun phrase (generally manifesting only

noun plus adjective). The relator tagmeme is filled

by the simple possession/ benefaction enclitic

-gât/ -kât or a member of the set of compound enclitics

indicating possession/benefaction and the person and

number of the possessor of the item filling the axis

tagmeme.

1.   When the axis tagmeme is filled by a subclass one

noun, the relator tagmeme is filled by a compound

enclitic form.

<u>ambin</u> - <u>naŋ</u> - <u>gât</u>

wife   -   my - poss./ben.

'my wife's (for my wife)

<u>tore</u>   -   <u>râp</u>   -   <u>niŋaŋ</u>   -   <u>gât</u>

relative- pl.   -   ours - poss./ben.

'our relatives' (for our relatives)

2.   When the axis tagmeme is filled by a subclass two noun, the relator tagmeme may be filled by either a simple or compound enclitic.

<u>kamân   -   niŋaŋ   -   ŋât</u>

village -   our   - poss./ ben.

'our village's (for our village)

<u>nep   -   naŋ   -   ŋât</u>

garden -   my   - poss./ben.

'my garden's (for my garden)

<u>kamân   -   ŋât</u>

village- poss./ben

'the village's' (for the village)

<u>nep   -   kât</u>

work/garden- poss./ben.

'the work's' (for the work)

3. When the axis tagmeme is filled by a subclass three noun or a regular or emphatic pronoun, the relator tagmeme is filled by the simple poss./ ben. enclitic -gât/-kât.

<u>sumbem   -   ŋât</u>

sky   - poss/ben.

'the sky's' (for the sky)

<u>nâ   -   gât</u>

I   -   poss./ben.

'mine' (for me)

<u>ma   -   gât</u>

sunshine - poss./ben.

'the sunshines' (for the sunshine)

<u>nengât</u>

we-poss./ben.

'ours' (for us)

4.5.3 Causal/Reason Axis Relator Phrase

This axis relator phrase identifies the reason
or cause for an action or situation. The phrase fills
the reason tagmeme on the clause level. The Causal/
Reason axis relator phrase is similar to the possessive/
benefactive axis relator phrase in that it has the
identical relator tagmeme -kât/-gât filling the relator
tagmeme, but with this phrase the axis tagmeme is filled
by a clause or sentence with an i.dependent verb form
final. Also the distribution on the clause level is
different to that of the possessive/benefactive axis
relator phrase.

Kât   mân pind - ip - kât   kâmbu   me - ip
stone neg. give him   - he did-ben. steal   take- he did
'Because he did not give him money he stole it.'

Âlip ut - nat - kât   nângâ   - map
well do /be- we will- ben.   think   - he does
'He wants for us to be/do well.'

Birâ   - m   âi - bap - kât   s - an
leave- homo., go - he will- ben. say- I do
'I say for him to leave it and go.'

Uman   zi - e - gât   hiriŋsâ - m tâ - pan
sleep   recline-they have-ben. be quiet- homo. stay-you will
'Because they are asleep you will stay quiet.'

4.5.4   Locative Axis Relator Phrase

These axis relator phrases are used to identify location, time and origin. hey fill the locative and time slot on the clause level and the axis tagmeme of the origin phrase.

1. When the axis tagmeme is filled by a subclass one noun the relator tagmeme is filled by a member of the compound enclitic set indicating the possessor, possession/ benefaction and location.

<u>ibâ   - naŋ   -   gâr   -   en</u>

father- my   -   poss./ben- loc

'to my father' (at my fathers house)

2. When the axis tagmeme is filled by a subclass two noun the relator tagmeme is filled by a form of the compound enclitic set indicating the possessor and location, or else it is filled by a simple enclitic.

<u>mirâ   -   nan</u>

house - my loc.

'to my house'

<u>mir   -   in</u>

house   -   loc.

'to the house'

<u>kamân   -   niŋan</u>

village - our loc.

'at our village'

kamân   -   ân

·village - loc.

'at the village'

3.   When the axis tagmeme is filled by a subclass three
noun or an emphatic pronoun form the relator tagmeme is
filled by one of the simple enclitic forms;
-ân/ -yân/ -in/ -gen indicating location.

Lae   - gen

Lae   - loc.

'at Lae.'

ma   - yân

sunshine - loc.

'In the dry weather' (in the sunshine)

sumbem - ân

sky   - loc.

'in the sky'

too   - in

water - loc.

'in the water/ river'

niiŋ -an

us ourselves - loc.

'to us ourselves (with us)

4.   When the axis tagmeme is filled by a demonstrative
pronoun the relator tagmeme is filled by the simple
locative enclitic -en

zor   -   en

that -   loc.

'there'

ur   -   en

up there- loc.

'up there'

5.   When the axis tagmeme is filled ·by a personal
pronoun form the relator tagmeme is filled by a compound
enclitic with possessive/benefactive and locative
components.

gâ - gâr - en

you - poss.- loc.

'with you' (at your place)

neŋ - gâr - en

us   - poss./ben.- loc.

'with us' (at our place)

6.   When the axis tagmeme is filled by .a qualified
noun phrase or an attributive noun phrase or a clause
or sentence the relator tagmeme is filled by one of the
simple locative enclitics;

-ân/ -yân/ -in

narâk   ŋâ - in
time   one/another - loc
'at one/another time'

map   narâg - ân
rain   time - loc.
'in the wet season'

namâ   pat - in
men's house big - loc
'in the big men's house'

4.5.5   Subject/Instrument Axis Relator Phrase

The subject/instrument ARP is used to identify
the subject and/or instrument.

The subject/ instrument axis relator phrase fills the
subject and instrument tagmemes of the transitive
clause.

Both subject and instrument tagmemes may be filled in
a clause, with the instrument tagmeme following con-
tiguous to the subject tagmeme. When co-occurring the
instrument is generally marked by a full form subject/
instrument marking enclitic and the subject marked by
a shortened form of the subject/instrument marking
enclitic set.

1.   When the axis tagmeme is filled by a subclass one
or two noun the relator tagmeme is filled by any member
of the set of compound enclitics with components indic-
ating person and number of the possessor and a subject/
instrument marking component.

Ibâ   - ŋâ bik - ŋandâ   ku - ap
father- his subj. hand -his inst. hit — he has
'His father hit him with his hand.'

Lâu   - niŋandâ   sâ   -   meŋ
mouth- our inst.   speak - we do
'We say it with our mouths.'

2.   When the axis tagmeme is filled by a subclass three noun or a demonstrative pronoun the relator tagmeme is filled by the third person singular en-clitic form -ŋandâ or its abbreviated form -ŋâ. Note that in such constructions the person number indicating component of the subject/instrument enclitic is not in focus.   The enclitic is functioning only as subject/instrument marker.

<u>Ma</u>   -   <u>ŋâ</u>   <u>noga</u>   -   <u>ap</u>
sunshine - subj. hit me   -   it has
'I have sunstroke.'

<u>Zorâ</u> - <u>ŋâ</u>   <u>me</u> - <u>m</u>   <u>tuuɡ</u>   -   <u>ip</u>
that - inst. take- homo, make it   - he did
'He took that and made it with it.'

Note;   All of the subject/instrument set of enclitic forms have a corresponding abbreviated form reached by dropping the final -<u>ndâ</u> from the form and changing the then final   vowel from a to â.

Chart 13   Subject/Instrument enclitics.

	sing.	dl.	pl.
1st.per.	-nandâ	-nikŋandâ	-niŋandâ
	-nâ	-nikŋâ	-niŋâ
2nd.per.	-gandâ	-zikŋandâ	-ziŋandâ
	-gâ	-zikŋâ	-ziŋâ
3rd.per.	-ŋandâ	-zikŋandâ	-ziŋandâ
	-ŋâ	-zikŋâ	-ziŋâ

As the abbreviated forms are identical in form to the set of possessor indicator enclitics care must be taken to avoid confusion.

With subclass three noun roots/stems, which do not generally take enclitics indicating possessor the abbreviated subject/instrument enclitics are used freely.

With subclass one noun roots/stems, which generally take possessor indicating clitics, the full form subject/object enclitics are used to avoid confusion.

With subclass two noun roots/stems which optionally take possessor indicating enclitics the principle generally followed is to use the full form subject/ instrument enclitics rather than the abbreviated forms if there is a possibility of confusion.

4.5.6   Accompaniment Axis Relator Phrase

The accompaniment axis relator phrase is used to identify accompanying person/s. It fills the accompaniment tagmeme on the clause level.

1.   When the axis tagmeme is filled by a class one or two noun or an adjective the relator tagmeme is filled by a member of the set of compound enclitics with components indicating accompaniment and the person and number of the possessor of the item filling the axis tagmeme.

mam   - zikŋ   -   oot

mother - their (du.) with

'those two with their mother.'

bâu - ziŋ -   oot

pigs - their- with

'with their pigs'

  -

Zâk   imba - ŋaŋ - oot   ŋâ   - bap

he   power - his - with   he   will

'He will come with all his power.'

2.   When the axis tagmeme is filled by a subclass three
noun the relator tagmeme is filled by the third person
singular accompaniment enclitic form -ŋoot. In this
situation the person number possessor indicating com-
ponent. is not in focus, but must occur.

too   -   ŋoot
water -   its with
'wet'

pibâ - ŋoot
wind - its with
'with breath/gas'

kârâp   -   ŋoot
fire   -   its with
'with fire' (heated, fiery'

4.5.7   Specification Axis Relator Phrase

Specification axis relator Phrases are used to
specifically identify items. The specification axis
relstor phrases have varying distribution on the
phrase and clause level accoring to the filler of the
axis tagmeme.

The axis tagmeme may be filled by a demonstrative
pronoun, comparitive, emphatic pronoun, adjective
or qualified'   noun phrase. The relator tagmeme is
filled by the specification enclitic -ik .

it   -   ik

like this - spec.

'specifically like this'

yat   -   ik

like that- spec.

'specifically like that'

zor - ik

that -   spec.

'specifically that'

ur   - ik

up there- spec.

'specifically that up there'

âlipŋ -   ik

good   -   spec.

'specifically good' (just fine)

<u>pat   -   ik</u>

large - spec.

'specifically the large ones'

<u>nin   -   ik</u>

I myself - spec.

'specifically I myself' (specifically mine)

<u>zikŋ   -   ik</u>

 he himself - spec.

 'specifically he himself'

4.5.8 Limitation Axis Relator Phrase

The limitation axis relator phrases are varied
but all indicate limitation that would be translated
as 'only' or 'just'. The distribution of the phrases
is varied in accord with the varied fillers of the
axis tagmeme. That is, with a nominal form filling
the axis tagmeme the phrase is found in nominal type
situations on the phrase and clause level. With an
adverb filling the axis tagmeme the phrase would fill
the modifier tagmeme of the modified verb phrase.

1.   Whem the axis tagmeme is filled by a subclass
three noun, regualr pronoun, emphatic pronoun or
adverb or other axis relator phrase type the relator
tagmeme is filled by the limitation enclitic -âk/-yâk
(-yâk after vowels, -âk after consonants).

too   - yâk
water - lim.
'only water'

mab   - âk
rain - lim.
'only rain'

tiq   - âk
secretly - lim.
'only secretly'

keq   - âk

quickly - lim.

'only quickly'

nâ   - yâk

I/me - lim.

'only me/myself'

The occurrence of regular personal pronouns in the axis
tagmeme is relatively rare. The axis is more commonly
filled by emphatic pronoun forms, and the phrase filling
the subject tagmeme on the clause level.

nin   - ak

I myself   - lim.

'just I myself'

zikŋ   - ak

he himself- lim.

'just he himself'

Most axis relator phrase types may fill the axis
tagmeme of the limitation axis relator phrase.
Examples of Axis relator phrases commonly found
filling the axis are given below;
Locative axis relator phrase.

kamân   - ân - âk

village - loc.- lim.

'only at the village'

<u>ibâ   - naŋgâren   - âk</u>

father   =   my poss./ben.loc.- lim.

'obảy at my father's place'

<u>zor   - en   - âk</u>

that   -   loc.- lim.

'only there'

Subject axis relator phrase.

<u>zorâ   - ŋ   - ak</u>

that   -   subj.- lim.

'just that'

Accompaniment axis relator phrase.

<u>mam   - ŋoor   - âk</u>

mother -   his with   - lim.

'only with his mother'

<u>kelâk   - ŋoor   - âk</u>

fat   -   his with - lim.

'only a fat one'

Specification axis relator phrase

<u>yat   - iɡ - âk</u>

like that - spec.-lim.

'just like that'

<u>bâu patâ   - iɡ - âk</u>

pig big   - spec.-lim.

'only the big pig.'

<u>zor   - iɡ   - âk</u>

that -   spec.- lim.

'just that specific one'

2. When the Axis Tagmeme is filled by a Subclass two
noun, adjective , numeral   or adverb   the Relator may
be filled by the limitation enclitic -râ (or one of
the allomorphs -tâ   or   -dâ   . -râ occurrs following
vowels, -tâ following voiceless   stops   and -dâ
following nasals.)

kânok-tâ

one-lim.

'only one'

bâu-râ

pig-lim.

'only a pig'

bâbâlaŋ-dâ

lightweight-lim.

'only lightweight'

4.5.9   Change of Actor Axis Relator Phrase

The change of actor axis relator phrase intro-
duces a new actor in contrast to the previous actor.
The phrase fills the subject tagmeme on the clause level.

The axis tagmeme is filled by a member of the
regular personal pronoun set or by a demonstrative
pronoun. The relator tagmeme is filled by the change
of actor indicating enclitic -goot/ -koot.

nâŋ   -   goot

I   -   actor change

'I in my turn'

ne   -   koot

we two - actor change   (neť + koot = nekoot)

'we two in our turn'

neŋ   - goot   zeŋ   -   goot

we   - actor change   they -   actor change

'we in our turn and they in their turn'

zorâ   -   goot

that   -   actor change

'that in its turn'

ŋâi   -   goot

another - actor change

'another will take a turn'

4.5.10   Origin Axis Relator Phrase

The origin axis relator phrase is used to identify
the origin of movement. It fills the location tagmeme
                                    occurs
of the motion verb phrase and ˄on the clause level also.

1.   When the axis tagmeme is filled by a locative type
noun or a locative axis relator phrase the relator
tagmeme is filled by a free form origin indicator
gâbâ.

Lae   gâbâ

Lae   from

'from Lae'

too   - in   gâbâ

water - loc. from
'from the water/river'

namâ   pat - in   gâbâ

men's house big - loc.   from

'from the big men's house'

nabo beb -   ân   gâbâ

yam   garden - loc. from

'from the yam garden'

2.   When the axis tagmeme is filled by a demonstrative
pronoun form the abbreviated pronoun forms occur and the
relator tagmeme is filled by the origin indicating
enclitic -bâ.

<u>zo   - bâ</u>
that - from
'from there'

<u>u   -   bâ</u>
up there - from
'from up there'

<u>zi   - bâ</u>
this - from
'from here'

<u>âmbi   - bâ</u>
down there- from
'from down there'

5. THE CLAUSE

Clauses constitute a level between the levels of phrase and sentence. Clauses are made up of tagmemes generally manifested by fillers from lower levels.

Apart from certain verb phrase types sequences of verbs are generally regarded as clauses in sequence as they can be expanded into longer clauses without distrupting the basic meaning of the sequence. (The exceptions to this are certain verb phrase types where two verbs are bound together in sequence giving a specific meaning which is disrupted if the two are separated.)

With typical transitive/intransitive clauses (which have a predicate) only the predicate of the clause is obligatory, all the preceeding non predicate tagmemes being optional. The occurrence of the optional non predicate tagmemes is generally limited to two or three per clause. The speaker who needs to introduce a number of items for clarity, generally increases the number of predicates/clauses proportionally.

The optional non predicate tagmemes chosen by a speaker for inclusion in a clause are significant indicators of the focus or emphasis of the clause. Items not in focus are omitted so that the item/items in focus tend to come to the fore of the clause.

For example; A typical transitive clause focusing on the subject would be,

<u>Ibâ - ŋandâ</u>   <u>ŋo   - bap</u>
father - your Subj.   hit you- he will
'Your father will hit you.'

Focusing on the instrument it would be;
<u>Bik - ŋandâ</u>   <u>ŋo - bap</u>
hand - his inst. hit you- he will
'It is with his hand that he will hit you.'

Focusing on the time it would be;
<u>Gâtâm</u>   <u>ŋo   - bap</u>
later   hit you- he will
'Later he will hit you.'

Focusing on the object it would be;
<u>Gâ</u> <u>ŋo   - bap</u>
you   hit you - he will
'It is you that he will hit.'

Contrast

An interesting feature found on the clause level
is the free form contrast particle which optionally
occurs in conjunction with the subject, time, location
and object tagmemes on the clause level but is really
more relevant to a higher level as it contrasts the
tagmeme filler it follows with a comparable tagmeme
filler in a previous clause. The contrast particle
may occur only   once per clause.

Zâk Indagen ari- ap. Nâ ko zir - en   ga - an.
He   Indagen   go - he. I   cont. here-loc. come - I have
'He went to Indagen. I in contrast come here.'

Muka   kopi sâmbu - wan   . Irak ko   yen   tâ - pat.
yesterday coffee pick it- i did. Today cont. nothing stay-I
                                                          will

Neŋ-gâr -en   be   buŋâ. Zeŋ - gâr   -en ko   be
us - pos.-loc.taro neg. them -pos. -loc.cont. taro

doŋbep zi - ap.
much   stay- it has.

'Our village is without taro. In their village in contrast
there is much taro.'

Kât   mân pindâ   - wan   . Gâ ko gi   - wan.
stone neg. give him - I did.   You cont. give you- I did.
'I did not give him money, but in contrast I gave you
money.'

The order of tagmemes occurring in clauses is
fairly set, although the speaker has the choice of
which optional tagmemes will be filled in any clause.
The time tagmeme may take a position either preceeding
or following the subject.

Time and location tagmemes occur on the clause level
but are typically more relevant to a higher level in
that they often give the time and locational setting
for a whole series of clauses. The reason tagmeme
also occurs on the clause level but is relevant to
a higher level in that a reason clause commonly
indicated reason for the action reported in a
following (or even preceeding) clause/clauses.

5.1   Dependent and Independent clauses

Dependent clauses are distinguished from
Independent clauses in that they have differing verb
suffixation on the filler of the predicate. Dependent
clauses have dependent predicate fillers and independent
clauses have independent predicate fillers. Also dependent
and independent clauses have different distribution on
the sentence level. Dependent clauses occur in sentence
non-final positions only. Independent clauses generally
mark the end of sentences but are also found embedded
in quotation clauses and in axis relator phrases.
In the case of embedding within a quotation clause the
independent clause is followed by a form of the verb
sâ 'to speak'. In the case of embedding within an axis
relator phrase the independent clause takes an enclitic
on the predicate. Either of these occurring with an
independent clause indicate that the clause is not
sentence final but rather dependent on a following
clause/clauses.

Chart 14 indicates the clause types found in Komba;

	Declarative	Quotation	Stative	Neg.Stative	Equation
Transitive	x				
Intransitive	x	x	x	x	x

5.1.1   Transitive Declarative Clause

The transitive declarative clause is made up of an obligatory transitive predicate preceeded by any of the optional tagmemes listed below. Generally not more than three non predicate tagmemes occur in any one clause.

Trans.dec.Cl.=±tíma,± Subj.±reason±acc.±num.±loc.±inst. ±I.Obj.±Obj.+Pred.

The transitive clause is distinguished from the intransitive clause in that the transitive has an optional instrument, object, and indirect object tagmemes and the filler of the predicate tagmeme is a transitive verb or verb phrase.

The time tagmeme of the transitive clause is filled by a noun, locative axis relator phrase, or noun phrase.

The subject tagmeme is filled by a noun, pronoun, noun phrase, possessor marking axis relator phrase of subject/instrument axis relator phrase.

The reason tagmeme is filled by the poss./ben. axis relator phrase wan-gât 'what for/why' or a causal/reason axis relator phrase.

The accompaniment tagmeme is filled by an accompaniment noun phrase or an accompaniment axis relator phrase.

The number tagmeme is manifested by a member of either of the ordinal sets represented by <u>zagât-ŋâ</u> 'second' (common numerals to which the adjective marker -<u>ŋâ</u> is added to form ordinal numerals) and <u>sâp</u> <u>zagât</u> 'twice' (regular numerals preceeded by <u>sâp</u> to give once, twice etc.)

The location tagmeme is filled by a noun, noun phrase or locative axis relator phrase.

The instrument tagmeme is filled by a instrument axis relator phrase or an apposition noun phrase with the head filled by an instrument axis relator phrase.

The indirect object tagmeme is filled by a noun or noun phrase.

The object tagmeme is filled by a pronoun, noun or noun phrase.

The predicate tagmeme is filled by a dependent or independent transitive verb form or a verb phrase which has a dependent or independent transitive verb form filling the head tagmeme.

<u>Mukan</u>   <u>ŋâ</u> <u>kât</u>   <u>gi</u>   <u>- bat</u>.
tomorrow I stone give you-I will
'tomorrow I will give you the money.'

wan   -gât   nan - gâ ku - at?

what -ben.   son - your hit him- you did

'Why did you hit you son?'

Nen Sikam zen sot nep tuu   - nat

we   Sikam they with work dò it   - we will

'We will work with Sikam people.'

Sap   zagât duku   - ip

times two   tell him - he did

'He told him twice.'

Zen   sâp   karâmbut hân   - la   lu   - m

they times three earth - carry   lift - homo.

'They take three loads in the wheelbarrow.'

Geraun zen - gâr - en bâu pind   - ip

Geraun they - poss.- loc.pig give him - he did

'He gave him a pig at the Geraun peoples place.'

Kembì.   ŋâi nâ   ni

sweet potato   a   me   give me

'Give me a sweet potato.'

5.2.1 Intransitive Declarative clause

The intransitive declarative clause is made up of an obligatory intransitive predicate tagmeme preceded by any of the optional tagmemes listed below. Generally not more than three non predicate tagmemes occur in any one clause.

Intrans.dec.Cl. = ± time± Subj.± reason ± acc.±num. ±loc. +Pred.

The intransitive clause is distinguished from the transitive clause in that it has no instrument, object and indirect object tagmemes and the predicate tagmeme is filled by an intransitive verb form or verb phrase.

The time tagmeme of the intransitive clause may precede or follow the subject tagmeme. The time tagmeme is filled by a noun, locative axis relator phrase or noun phrase.

The subject tagmeme is filled by a noun, pronoun, noun phrase, possessor marking axis relator phrase or subject/instrument axis relator phrase.

The reason tagmeme is filled by the poss./ben. axis relator phrase wan-gât 'why' or by a causal/ reason axis relator phrase.

The accompaniment tagmeme is filled by an accompaniment noun phrase or an accompaniment axis relator phrase.

The number tagmeme is manifested by a member of either of the ordinal sets represented by <u>zaɡâtɲâ</u> second' (common numerals to which the adjective marker -<u>ɲâ</u> is added to form second, third, etc.) and <u>sâp</u> <u>zaɡât</u> 'two times' (regular numerals preceded by <u>sâp</u> 'to give'; once twice etc.)

The location tagmeme is filled by a noun, noun phrase, locative axis relator phrase, or origin axis relator phrase. The predicate tagmeme is filled by a dependent or independent intransitive verb or verb phrase which has a dependent or independent intransitive verb form filling the head tagmeme.

<u>Zâk</u> <u>kamân</u> <u>-</u> <u>ân</u> <u>ɡâbâ</u> <u>ɡâ</u> <u>-</u> <u>ip</u>
he   village-loc.   from   come- he did
'He came from the village.'

<u>Mukan</u>   <u>zaɡâtɲâ</u>   <u>zi</u>   <u>ɡâ</u> <u>-</u> <u>ip</u>
yesterday second   here   come - he did
'He came here yesterday for the second time.

<u>Sâp</u>   <u>zaɡât</u>   <u>Ununu</u>   <u>ar</u> <u>-</u> <u>ip</u>
times two   Ununu   go   - he did
'He went to Ununu village twice.'

Gâ   wan — gât   yen   tap — ∅ ta — at
you   what — for   nothing stay — homo.stay— you do
'Why are you doing nothing.'

5.3.2   Quotation Clause

The quotation clause is an intransitive declarative clause commonly used in reported speech where quotations of word, phrase, clause or sentence length are embedded in a clause. Also quotation clauses are used a, an alternative to the use of readiness axis relator phrases in expressing intention to act.

The clause is made up of an obligatory quotation tagmeme filled by a word, phrase or even sentence, and an obligatory predicate tagmeme which is filled by a form of the verb sâ- 'to speak' or a verb phrase which includes a form of the verb sâ- 'to speak'.

Quotation Cl. = +Quote + Pred.
The quotation clause is distinguished by the fact that the quotation tagmeme is commonly filled by a clause or sentence length quotation with a final independent verb, and the predicate tagmeme is always filled by a form of the verb sâ- 'to speak' or a verb phrase including a form of the same verb.

For quotations which are longer that one sentence in length see the Paragraph level 7.1.3 as such quotation constructions generally involve a minimum of four clauses and should not be confused with the quotation clause construction described here.

Gâ zi ta - at sâ - m

you here stay - you do say - homo.

'Saying "You are here."'

a no - bap sâ - m

man kill me- he will say- homo.

'Saying "A man will/might kill me."

Gâ gik - pat sâ - m ga - an

you see you- I will say - homo.come - I did

'I came saying, "I will see you."'

5.2.3   Stative Clause

The stative clause is an intransitive clause type
made up of optional subject and time tagmemes and a
obligatory complement tagmeme and optional predicate
tagmeme. Either the subject or predicate tagmeme
must occur for a valid stative clause.

Stative Cl. = ±Subj. ±time +Complement ±Pred.

The subject tagmeme is filled by a noun, proboun,
axis relator phrase or noun phrase.

The time tagmeme is filled by a noun or locative
axis relator phrase.

The complement tagmeme is filled by a noun,
adjective, adjective phrase, comparison phrase of
noun phrase.

The predicate tagmeme is filled by a form of the
verb op 'to be' or a verb phrase which includes the
same verb.

Nâ mâsek   op - ∅   ta -   an

I sick   be - homo. stay - I have

'I am sick.'

Nâ Lululai   sangiñâ

I   luluai   previous

'I am the previous Luluai.'

Gâ   pateŋ   u - at?

you   cold   be - you have

'Are you cold?'

A   zo   mârum   sombâ   u - ap

man that already   aged   be - he has

'That man is already old.'

Ambân   yatâ   op - ∅

woman   like that be- homo.

'Being like a woman'

5.2.4   Negative stative clause

The negative stative clause is different to the regular stative clause in that the predicate tagmeme is obligatory and has a different filler. The other tagmemes are identical and have the same sets of fillers as the corresponding tagmemes of the regular stative clause.

Neg. Stative Cl.= ± Subj. ±time + Complement + Pred.

The predicate tagmeme is always filled by the general free negative form <u>buŋâ</u> 'not /without'

<u>yatâ</u>   <u>buŋâ</u>

like that negative

'not like that.'

<u>Zâk</u>   <u>ə</u>   <u>kârep</u>   <u>buŋâ</u>

he   man   tall   negative

'He is not a tall man.'

<u>Zo</u>   <u>neŋ</u> - <u>qât</u>   <u>den</u>   <u>buŋâ</u>

that us - poss   talk   negative

'That is not our talk/language.'

In some instances the clause is used to express the concept of being without.

Nâ   kârâp   buŋâ
I   fire   negative
'I have no fire/matches.'

Nen   bâuм   buŋâ
we   pig   negative
'We have no pigs.'

5.2.5   Equatioanl Clause

The equational clause in contrast to the stative clauses has no obvious predicate tagmeme. It is made up of obligatory subject and complement tagmemes.

Equational Cl. = + Subj. + Complement

The subject tagmeme is generally filled by an attributive noun phrase. The complement tagmeme is filled by a noun or a pronoun.

Too   ŋâi   kut - ŋâ   Puleŋ

water   a   name - its   Puleŋ

'A river called Puleŋ.'

A   ŋâi   kut - ŋâ   Goraiyupe

man   a   name - his Goraiyupe.'

' A man named Goraiyupe.'

Namâ   mâi - râp - ŋâ   nen

clan house owner - pl. - its   we

'We are the woners of the clan house.'

5.3   Question cluase

Any independent declarative clause can be either
a statement marked by high to low intonation pattern,
or a question marked by low to high intonation pattern.

Gâ   irak   Kabwum   âi - banı
you   today   Kabwum   go - you will
'You will go to Kabwum today.'

Gâ irak   Kabwum   âi   - baŋ?
you today   Kabwum   go   - you will
'Will you go to Kabwum today?'

5. Interrogative clause

Interrogative clauses fit the transitive and intransitive declarative, quotation and stative clause type patterns. When an interrogative form or axis relator phrase with the axis filled by an interrogative manifests any non predicate tagmeme of these clause types the clause becomes an interrogative clause of the particular type. Only one interrogative can in general occur in a clause (when there is embedding such as in the quotation clause, more than one interrogative may occur.)

The clause level tagmemes listed below are filled by the corresponding interrogative fillers listed.

Tagmeme	Interrogative fillers	
Subject	wan	'what thing'
Object	ŋâi	'who'
Indirect Object		
Time	dâuŋan	'when'
	narâk wan-an	'time what-loc. 'at what time'
	narâk ikâ zo-ren	time where that-loc.'when'
Reason	wan-ŋât	'why'
Number	dabutâ	'how many'
	sâp dabutâ	'how often'

Location   <u>ikâ</u>   'where'

                <u>waniŋ</u>   'where'

Instrument   <u>wan</u>   'what thing'

The complement of the stative clause takes the fillers

           <u>wan</u>   'what

           <u>ŋâi</u>   'who'

           <u>dap</u>   'what/how'

The interrogative form dap 'what/how' fills the manner tagmeme of the modified verb phrase and the complement tagmeme of the comparison phrase on the phrase level. These two phrase types fill predicate tagmemes on the clause level.

<u>Dap</u> <u>yatâ</u>   <u>tuu - we</u>?
what like that   make- you did
'How did you make it?'

<u>Dap</u> <u>s   - ap</u>
what speak - he has
'What did he say?'

<u>ŋâi -ŋâ</u> <u>giŋ   - ap</u>?
who - subj. give to- he has
'Who gave it to you?'

Wan - ŋâ   ɡɑɡ   - ap?

what - subj.   hit you- it has

'What hit you?'

Ɖâi pindi   -   in?

who give to him - you did

'To whom did you give it?'

Ibâ   - ŋâ wan - ŋandâ   ku   - ap?

father - his what - inst.   hit him- he has

'With what did his father hit him?'

Zâk dâuŋan kâmbu me   - ip?

he   when   steal take it- he did

'When did he steal it?'

Gâ sâp   dabutâ   ar - in?

you times how many   go - you did

'How many times did you go?'

Mam - ɡâ ikâ   ta - ap?

mother- your where stay - she has

'Where is your mother staying?'

Waniŋ   ɡâbâ ɡa - ap?

where   from come- he has

'From where has he come?'

Wan - ɡât hârâŋs - at?

what - ben. refuse - you have

'Why did you refuse?'

5.5   Continuation Clause substitute

An interesting feature on the clause level is a clause substitute construction which does not have the internal features of a clause but functions as a clause. It is not possible to regard the clause substitute as part of the clause preceding it although its function is to indicate continuation of the predicate action of the previous clause.   The predicate of the preceding clause may close with an independent or dependent verb form but if a dependent verb form the clause connector ko 'then' is used to introduce the clause substitute manâ. (This form may be reduplicated up to four times depending on the extent of continuation to be expressed.)

Kep   ko - m   ko manâ manâ ko aŋsâ   - ip
dance hit -homo. then ctd. ctd. comp. dawn   - it did
'They kept on and on dancing until daybreak.'

Ai   - m - ŋâ   ko   manâ   manâ   manâ   manâ   ko
go   - homo.-comp. then ctd.   ctd.   ctd.   ctd. comp.

takâ   - we
arrive - they did
'They went and continued on and on until they arrived.'

Kâru - wet. Manâ mânâ ko ŋâtiksâi   ko
search-they(dl). ctd.ctd.comp. night-it hetero. comp.

zi   - wet.
recline- they did
'Those two searched. Continuing on and on then it became night and they slept.'

An alternative .   method of expressing continued
action is the reduplication of homopersonal dependent
verbs.   These reduplications are regarded as being
each a separate clause.

Ne - m   ne - m   ne - m   ko   zi - we
eat - homo.eat - homp. eat - homo. comp. recline - they did
'They ate on and on and then slept.'

6.0   THE SENTENCE

The sentence is the level above the clause but below the paragraph. The sentence is marked by having two or more bases with all non-final bases having dependent verb forms indicating either an identical (homopersonal) subject or a different (heteropersonal) subject in the following base and the final base having an independent verb form in the predicate.

The base fillers may optionally be connected by the sequential link <u>ko</u> 'then'. Without this sequential link the sentence generally still expresses sequence, but with the inclusion of it, time sequence comes more clearly into focus. The sentence may indicate time sequence, logical sequence, condition or result. Commonly a sentence can be taken to indicate either of two of these without clear distinction which of the two is intended.

<u>Tuuq – indâ</u>   <u>map</u> <u>gâ – i</u>   <u>bir – âm</u>
work – we hetero. rain come –it hetero. leave– homp.

<u>g   – en.</u>
come – we have.

This could be taken to mean.

We were working, then the rain came and we quit and came here.'

Alternatively it could be taken to mean;

'We were working, but because the rain came we quit and came here.'

The sentence typically indicates some sequential
relationship between bases without specification as to
any specific type of sequence. However by filling the
reason tagmeme of an early clause with a causal/
benefactive axis relator phrase, a sentence that is
more specifically condition-result or cause-effect
can be formed.

Map ga - ap   - kât nep birâ - m   g - en.
rain come - it has - ben. work leave - homo. come-we have.
'We left work and came here because the rain came.'

The sentence is made up of an optional periphery and two or more bases optionally linked by the link ko 'then.'

Chart 15

Sentence constituents chart

$\pm$ Periphery +(+Base 1 $\pm$ Link)^n +Base 2

$\pm$ Periphery		+(+Base 1	$\pm$ Link)^n	+Base 2
ee	'yes'	Dependent	ko	Independent
oŋ	'yes'	clause		clause
buŋâ	'no'	(homopersonal		
ka	'but'	or		
zorat	'that'	heteropersonal		
zo ko		-verb form)		
'that then'				
zorat ko				
'that then'				
zirat				
'this'				
oi	'and'			
oi ko				
'and then'				

Sentence examples;

Base 1: Dependent clause

<u>Zo</u> <u>dât</u> - <u>nâŋo</u>   - <u>i</u> <u>ko</u>

that tell - us   -he hetero.

Base 2; Dependent clause

<u>top</u> - <u>ŋâ</u> <u>zo</u> <u>nâŋâ</u>   - <u>m</u>

basis - its that understand - homo.

Base 3; Independent clause

<u>kusik</u> - <u>ŋ</u> - <u>an</u>   <u>tuu</u> - <u>wen</u>.

good   - its- loc.   make - we did
                              it

'He told us that and then understanding all about
it we made/did it well.'

Base 1: Dependent clause

<u>Zet</u>   <u>ko</u> <u>zâi</u> - <u>m</u> - <u>ŋâ</u>
You (du.)cont. go up - homo.- comp.

Base 2: Independent clause

<u>âtâ</u>   - <u>ŋandâ</u> <u>gat</u>   - <u>ŋâ</u> <u>galem</u>
elder sister- subj· younger sister-her overseer

<u>u</u> - <u>pap</u>.
be/do - she will

After you two, in contrast to me, have gone up to the
village, the elder will take care of the younger sister.

Base 1: Dependent clause

Bâu hulin ko   — m

pig wild strike — homo.
                it

Base 2: Dependent clause

gaa   — m

cut it — homo.

Base 3: Dependent clause

o   —   m

cook it — homo.

Base 4: Independent clause. (Continuous verb phrase)

ne   — m   t.   — en

eat it — homo. sit/stay   — we have

'We killed a wild pig, cut it up and cooked it and are
now eating it.'

Base 1: Dependent clause

Nak panâ   me — m   ko

tree middle   take — homo. comp.

Base 2: Dependent clause

tâk dii — m   ko

vine lead it— homo.   comp.

Base 3: Dependent clause

kopi goot   — nan   âi

coffee tips — its loc.   we go (stem)

Base 4: Dependent clause

saa   -   qindâ   ko

tie it - we hetero.   comp

Base 5: Dependent clause

qwolantenâksâ   - m

bend down   - homo.

Base 6: Dependent clause

qe   - i

descend- it hetero.

Base 7: Dependent clause

nebut - ŋâ   kwâk   - ŋan âi   ze   -   m   ko

other - its   on top - its loc.go   recline-homo. comp.

Base 8: Independent clause

bon   - ŋâ âlip yatâ   zo   âsage   -   map

fruit - its well like that   that appear - it does

'We take the mid section of the coffee tree, bring a
string and tie it to the tips of the branch and it
goes down with the weight of the stone on the string
and stays there with the others being above it. Then
when it is like that it bears fruit well.'

7   THE PARAGRAPH

The paragraph is the level found above the sentence but below the discourse level. Paragraphs are generally marked by having two or more tagmemes filled by sentences or sentence fragments (Most commonly including an independent verb form in sentence final position). The one exception to this pattern is the Alternative paragraph which has as its obligatory tagmemes an alternative tagmeme and a link.

7.1 Paragraph Types

Seventeen different paragraph types have been recognized in Komba data. The seventeen different paragraph types are presented in chart 16.

Chart 16 Paragraph Types

Sequential combination	Narrative	Procedural		
Dealing with Speech and Response	Quote	Dialogue	Command-Fulfillment	
Juxtaposed	Condition-Result	Exhortation	Warning	Question Answer
Modified emphsis	Pharaphrase	Identical Predicate	Exposition	Reinforcement
Conjunction linked	Coordinate	Alternate	Contrast	Antithetical

The distinguishing features of the seventeen paragraph type' are presented in chart 17. The paragraph formulae have been abbreviated for charting purposes.

Chart 17, Paragraph Distinguishing Features.

203

Type	Formula	Subject		Tense		Other Features	Function
		Same	Diff	Same	Diff		
Narr.	+2-8 BUs	X	x	x			Express narrative sequence
Proc.	+2-6 Steps	x		x			Express steps in procedure
Quote	+intro+quote ± closure	x		x		x	Intr&Clos inc.Vb. sâ	Present quoted speech.
Dialogue	+Sp.1±2/3±4	x	x	x	x	Sp.1 filled by Quote P	Present dialogue/ reasoning
Condit.-Result	+condit+res &/or conc.	x	x	x	x		Express condition result,conclusion.
Warning	+res.+evasion	x	x	x	x		Present warning to evade result
Identical Predicate	+2-9 slots	x	x	x	x		Give diff.Subj.Obj. or loc. with identical action.
Paraphr.	+text+restate	x		x			Present text and restatement.
Reinfo.	+ text + reinforce	x		x			Present text and reinforcement.
Expo.	+text +1-3expo expo	x	x	x			Present text and expound it.
Contrast	+ 2contrasts+ ± contrast1-2	x	x	x	x	Filler/s inc.markers	Contrast Subj.Obj. time or location.
Exhort.	+ basis + exhortation	x	x	x	x	Imp./Fut.T in exhort	Basis and urge to action.
Alt.	+alt.1+link+ alt.2	x	x	x	x	link mo'or'	Present alternates.
Antith.	+thesis±reject +antithesis	x	x	x	x		Contrast false thesis with true.
Coor.	+coord.1+link + coord.2	x	x	x		link sot 'and'	Present dual condition,result etc
Command-Fulfill	+Command+ fulfillment	x	x	x	x	Imp./Fut.T in command	Narrate command and fulfillment.
Question - Answer	+question + answer	x	x	x	x		Pose question and give answer.

Paragraph Periphery

Paragraphs optionally have initial and/or final
periphery. The periphery gives the setting in regard to
time and/or location. Constructions with both an initial
and final periphery are not common. An initial periphery
is quite common, however when the setting is not given
in an ititial periphery it may be presented in a final
periphery. As the periphery of an initial paragraph often
gives the setting for a discourse, the periphery can be
regarded as a discourse level item. In paragraph types
such as the Narrative, the setting is often expressed in a
phrase or clause embedded in the initial Build Up.
Paragraphs which are embedded occur without periphery
items.

Paragraph Embedding

Paragraph embedding is a common feature of Komba
Paragraph level. The embedding is extensive, it not
being uncommon to find a paragraph embedded within a
paragraph which is embedded within another paragraph.
Rather than a detailed listing of the combinations of
embedding that are possible, a charting of the most
common embedding found is here presented with reference
to examples given of the various paragraph types. In
chart 18 are charted the examples of paragraph embedding
with references to the examples in which they are found.
For example the reference CR1 indicates an example of
embedding in the first example under Condition-Result
Paragraph. It will be noted that some paragraph types
are more freely embedded than others. While not being
exhaustive, this chart presents the embedding found in
a varied selection of Komba Text.

Chart 18. Paragraph Embedding.

Paragraphs on this column

Paragraph	embedded	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17
Narrative	1		P1				CR2	W1					Ex1					
Procedural	2		P3		CF2													
Identical Predicate	3	P5										E1	Ex2					
Quote	4	N1				D1 D2	CR2	N3	Par2		P1				Ant1		CF1 CF2	
Dialogue	5				N5		CR1	W1			N1		Ex1	CR2				
Condition-Result	6	N5			N5		CR1 CR2	W1			N1		Ex1	CR2				
Warning	7	N3																
Paraphrase	8																	
Reinforce	9																	
Exposition	10	N5	P1 P4 P5	Ip1	N1 CF1 Q3	D2	,	N2 N3				N2 C2						
Contrast	11	N4 CR2	P4									N4 E2						
Exhortation	12	N5		Ip2	N5													
Alt.	13	CF2					CR2											
Antith.	14											E2						
Coord.	15						CR1											
Command-Fulfill	16																	
Question-Answer	17																	

In presenting the formulae for the various
paragraph types, the common optional and final periphery
tagmemes have not been included but are present in some
of the examples given.

The list of tagmeme fillers charted with each
paragraph type is not exhaustive, but rather indicates
common occurrence as illustrated by the examples given.

7.1.1   Narrative Paragraph

The function of the narrative paragraph is the expression of a narrative sequence. The feature of the narrative paragraph is a string of from two to eight Build Ups. All Build Ups may optionally begin with a conjunction.

The narrative is the most common paragraph type. It occurs in all types of discourse and has been observed embedded in barrative, warning, procedural, exhortation and command-fulfillment paragraphs.

The setting of a narrative paragraph is generally expressed inaa phrase or clause embedded in the initial Build Up. The setting indicated is generally time and/ or location.

The most common method of connecting all Build Ups is by the repetion of a dependent form of the verb which was in an independent form in a final position in the previous Build Up. The use of such a connection out- numbers the use of conjunctions by a ratio of at least two to one.

Any one of the following conjunctions may optionally occur at the beginning of the initial Build Up: oi 'and', ka 'but', gât ko 'so then', zo ko that then, or zorat 'that'.

The subsequent Build Ups may optionally begin with any one of the following conjunctions : oi 'and', oi ko 'and then', zo ko 'that then', zorat dâp 'in accord with that', or the exclamation hâiyop.

Chart 19

Narrative Paragraph

+   BU $^{2-8}$

Independent
  Clause.

Sentence

Paragraph types;

   Quote

   Contrast

   Question-

   Answer

   Dialogue

   Exposition

   Warning

Narrative paragraph examples;

N-1

BU 1: Sentence

Ka nâ - gât   mam   - zat - nâ ko ibâ   - zik   - ŋoot

but I   - Poss. mother - du. - my cont.father-their du.-with

ga - m - ŋâ   gei   - tâ   ko too

come - homo.- comp.   descend   - du.hetero. comp. river

nire - m   nâmbut kopgâ - itâ   ko wariŋ

cross - homo. other side ascedn - they du.herero. comp. earthquake

me   - i   ziŋgir - i   buku   -râp

get it - it hetero. see them - he hetero. cousin - pl.

nin -ziŋgâ   - m gei   - m   ze   - m

eat - them-homo.   descend   - homo. recline - homo.

tâ. - ip.

stay - it did.

BU 2: Quote Paragraph

    Introduction: Sentence

yei yei sâ   - netâ   bârat   - zatŋâ   itâ

woe woe speak - they hetero. daughter- du. his like this

sâ   - m   dâzâko   - ip.

speak - homo. tell them du. - he did

Quote: Exposition Paragraph

Text: Sentence

"Zet   ko   zâi   - m   - ŋâ   âtâ   -   ŋamdâ

you du.cont.ascend - homo.-comp.   elder sister- Subj.

ŋat   - ŋâ ŋalem   u   -   pap.

younger sister- her overseer be/do - she will.

Exposition Condition- Result Paragraph

Condition: Independent Clause

ŋâi sot ândi   - bat?

who with live   - I will?

Result : Sentence

Gât ko   nâ kâr - ân ari - a   ni - ni - bap."

So   then I stone- loc. go I hetero. eat - me - it will.

BU 3: Sentence

sâ   - m·   ko puriksâ - m   kâr - ân   ar - i

speak homo.   comp turn   - homo. stone- loc. go - he hetero.

ko   kât - ŋâ me - m - ŋâ Gwamâ too - in

comp. stone-Subj. take - homo. - comp. Gwamâ   river - loc.

ŋiar   - ip.

descend - it did.

'But my two mothers (aunts) on the other hand came with their father and went down, crossed the river and came up the other side. Then the earthquake occurred and the father saw other friends of his being taken in a landslide. Those people wailed and he said to his two daughters, "The two of you go up to the village and the elder will take care of the younger. Because I have no one left to live with, I will go to the landslide and it will take me too." Having spoken he then turned and went to the landslide. Then the landslide took him down to the Gwama River.'

Narrative Paragraph examples;

N: - 2

BU 1: Independent Clause

Koŋe nii   kabâŋ   - an mindumindu - yân Ununu
Koŋe aircraft clearing - loc. gathering - loc. Ununu

sot Lama Koŋe kambâm yâmbâtŋâ   ago - we.
and Lama Koŋe fight   heavy   fight- they did.

BU 2: Sentence

Ago   - netâ   zor - en - âk Kiap   sot
Fight - they herero. that - loc.-lim. patrol officer and

polisiman ga - m - ŋâ   aksik dii - ziŋâ - m
policeman come - homo. - comp. all   led-them- homo.

teŋgâ kwânâŋgâ - ziŋâ   - m   gilâm - ziŋ ek - ŋâ
line stand   - them up - homo. blood - their see- comp.

min - ziŋgâ   - m   Kabwum   âi - we.
take - them   - homo.Kabwum go - they did.

BU 3: Independent Clause

Zor - en tâk nam - in   t   - e .
There- loc. vine house- loc. sit/stay- they have.

BU 4: Independent Clause

Nâmbutŋâ kâin zagât nambutŋâ kâin kimembut zâmbar   - ip
Some   moon two some   moon four put them - he did.

BU 5:   Sentence

<u>A</u>   <u>ambân</u> <u>aksik</u> <u>Wasu</u> <u>gei   - ne</u>   <u>nâmbutŋâ</u>   <u>Kabwum</u>

men women all   Wasu descend-they hereo. some   Kabwum

<u>yatâ</u>   <u>tuu - m</u>   <u>t   - e.</u>

like that work-homo   stay - they have.

Periphery : Sentence

<u>Kambâm</u> <u>zo</u> <u>Setemba</u>   <u>topkwap - ŋâ</u>   <u>zoren</u>   <u>ago   - we.</u>

Fight that September begin   - comp. that loc. fight - they did.

'At a meeting on Konge airstrip Ununu and Lama and Konge
villagers had a serious fight. They fought and just then
the Government Officer and policemen came and led the
people away, lined them up and having looked at their
wounds they took them to Kabwum. They are in prison
there. Some of them he sentenced to two months and some
to four months. any of them went down to the prison at
Wasu and some are working in prison at Kabwum. It was the
beginning of September when that fight happened.'

Narrative Paragraph examples;

N - 3

BU 1: Sentence

Buku - râpniŋ   Kabwum kiŋ top âmbi   zen pisuk

cousin - pl. our   Kabwum foot base down there they   all

pa   - ne   ko bet moli - ziŋgâ - namen.

put it- they herero.comp after follow-them   we are about to.

BU 2: Warning Paragraph

    Unwanted R_esult: Quote Paragraph

      Introduction: Independent Clause

Zorat op   ko silep zirat sâ - be.

that   be-ɓomo.comp. shelter   this   speak-you might.

      Quote: Independent Clause

"Silep mâiktâ tuu - namen."

shelter small   make- we are about to.

    Evasion: Exposition Paragraph

      Text: Independent Clause

Mân sâ   - bi.

neg.speak - you pl. will

      Exposition: Sentence

Silep mâik - tarâ tuuɠ - i   kinz ap.

shelter small- Adj.   make - he heteo. stand - it has.

BU 3:   Sentence

<u>Zo</u>   <u>ko</u>   <u>birâ</u>   - m   <u>mindumindu</u> - in   <u>s</u>   - a

That   comp. leave it- homo. gathering - loc.speak- I hetero.

<u>ko</u>   <u>zi</u>   <u>pâ</u>   - <u>namen</u>.

comp.here put it-we are about to.

   'Our friends down around Kabwum have all built

stores and now at last we are about to follow on.

That being so you might say, "We are about to build

another small store." Do not say that. A small store has

already been built and here it stands. So then leaving

off I will speak it in the meeting and we will put our

coffee in this store.'

Narrative paragraph examples;

N-4

BU:1: Sentence

<u>Mârum</u>   <u>kambâm</u> <u>patâ</u> <u>tak</u> - <u>ip</u>   <u>zor</u> - <u>en.</u>
previously fight big   arrive- it did that - loc.

<u>kambâm</u> - <u>ân</u> <u>sâk</u> <u>kâu</u> <u>ziŋâ</u>   <u>tirek</u>   <u>patâ</u>
fight   - loc. skin white they Subj. bridge big

<u>tuu</u>   - <u>we.</u>
make it - they did.

BU 2: Sentence

<u>Zorâ</u> - <u>ŋ</u> <u>âk</u> - <u>i</u>   <u>ba</u>   <u>âi</u> - <u>netâ</u>   <u>a</u>
That - Subj. finish-it hetero. mot. go - they hetero. men

<u>ziŋâ</u>   <u>âi</u> <u>gaga</u> <u>urâ</u> - <u>we.</u>
they Subj. go   coming be   - they did.

BU 3: Independent clause

<u>Zorâ</u>   - <u>ŋ</u> <u>uurup</u> <u>ŋâi</u> <u>tak</u>   - <u>ip.</u>
That   - Subj. flood a   arrive - it did.

BU 4: Sentence

<u>Tirek</u>   <u>zo</u> <u>kwâkâ</u>   - <u>m</u>   <u>lu</u>   - <u>m</u>   <u>ba</u> <u>ar</u> - <u>ip.</u>
bridge   that pick it- homo. lift - homo. mot. go - it did.

BU 5: Independent clause

<u>Oi</u> <u>ko</u> <u>kiap</u>   <u>sâ</u>   - <u>ip.</u>
and then Gov. officer   speak - he did.

BU 6: Contrast Paragraph

   Contrast 1: Sentence

<u>A</u> <u>ambân</u> <u>zeŋ</u> - <u>ŋât</u>   <u>op</u>   - <u>ŋâ</u> <u>sâ</u> - <u>i</u>

man woman them- ben. be homo.- comp. speak- he hetero.

<u>tap</u> - <u>ŋâ</u> <u>kanu</u> - <u>ŋâ</u> <u>min</u> - <u>ziŋgâ</u> - <u>m</u> <u>âi</u>

stay homo.-comp canoe-Subj. take - them - homo. go

<u>gaga</u> <u>op</u> - <u>mâ</u> - <u>ip</u>.

coming be - cust.- it did.

    Contrast 2: Exposition Paragraph

      Text: Independent Clause

<u>Narâkŋâ</u> <u>Hube</u> <u>âi</u> - <u>wen</u> <u>zor</u> - <u>en</u> <u>ko</u> <u>kanu</u> <u>patâ</u> <u>buŋâ</u>.

Time   Hube go - we did that - loc. cont. canoe large not.

      Exposition 1: Independent Clause

<u>Kanu</u> <u>mâitârâ</u> <u>ŋâi</u> <u>zagât</u>.

canoe small   very   two

      Exposition 2: Contrast Paragraph

        Contrast 1: Sentence

<u>Zagâr</u> - <u>âk</u> <u>min</u> - <u>ziŋgâ</u> - <u>m</u> <u>âi</u> - <u>m</u> <u>ga</u> - <u>m</u>

two   - lim. take - them - homo. go - homo. come- homo.

<u>tâ</u> - <u>ip</u> .

stay- it did.

        Contrast 2: Independent Clause

<u>Mari</u> - <u>ŋâ</u> <u>ko</u> <u>karâmbut</u> <u>o</u> - <u>ip</u>.

owner - its cont.   three   be - it did.

'Previously the big war came. There in the war the
Europeans made a large bridge. After the war people
used it until a flood came and plucked up that bridge
and carried it away. Then the Government Officer
gave a command for a canoe to be there for the
ferrying of people across. At the time when we went
to Hube it was not a big canoe. There were two small
canoes. They would only take two passengers at a
time. The ferryman was a third person in the canoe.

Narrative Paragraph examples;

N5

BU 1: Sentence

A   ambân   min - ziŋgâ - m   âi - m   gâ   - ip.

man woman get - them - homo.go - homo. come- he did.

BU 2: Sentence

Manâ   ko   ŋâi   zâi   - we.

continued then another ascend- they did.

BU 3: Exposition Paragraph

    Text: Sentence

Zo   ko   a   ŋâi   sâ   - i   ambân   zagât zar   - itâ

that then man a   speak - he hetero.woman two ascend - they du.
                                                       hetero.

a   ŋâi   zar   - ip.

man a   ascend - he did.

    Exposition: Independent Clause

A   zo   ko   ambân   zo   biit   - ŋâ.

man that cont. woman that nephew - her.

BU 4: Quote Paragraph

    Introduction: Independent clause

Aiop,   kateptâ zorâ-ŋ   itâ   sâ   - ip.

exclamation child   that-Subj. like this speak - he did.

    Quote: Exhortation Paragraph and Exposition Paragraph

        Basis: Independent Clause

"Gâ   a   patâ.

you   man large.

Exhortation: Sentence

Birâ   -   m   tât   -   nan.

leave off- homo. stay - you should.

Exposition Paragraph

Text: Independent Clause

Kanurâ   zi patâ buŋâ

canoe   this big not.

Exposition 1: Independent clause

Mâiktârâ.

small

Exposition 2: Sentnece

Zorat   zo zagât dâp - ŋan - âk   zâi   - babot .[2]

so then that two   fit - its loc.-lim. ascend - they du. will.

BU 5: Quote Paragraph

Introduction: Sentence

Sâ   - i   itâ   sâ   - ip.

speak - he hetero. like this speak - he did

Quote: Condition- Result Paragraph

Condition: Independent Clause

"Katep - ŋâ   s   - at.

 child - subj. speak - you have

Result: Independent Clause

<u>Gâ - gât</u>   <u>den</u>   <u>mân</u> <u>nâŋgâ</u>   - <u>bat.</u>

you - poss. talk neg. listen - I will

Conclusion: Sentence

<u>Kanu</u> <u>zi</u> <u>âlip</u> <u>dâp</u> - <u>ŋan</u>   <u>ba</u> <u>zâi</u>   - <u>nat.</u>"

canoe this alright fit-its loc. mot. ascend - we will.

BU 6: Sentence

<u>Sâ</u>   - <u>i</u>   <u>ko</u>   <u>kateptâ</u>   <u>zo</u>   <u>sâ</u>   - <u>ip.</u>

speak- he hetero.then child that   speak- he did

BU 7: Condition- Result Paragraph

Condition: Independent Clause

<u>Zo</u>   <u>ko</u>   <u>wan</u> - <u>gât</u> <u>kateptâ</u> <u>mâik</u> <u>zorâ</u>   - <u>ŋ</u>   <u>sâ</u> - <u>ip.</u>

that then what-ben. child   small that - Subj. speak-he did.

Result: Indepnedent Clause

<u>Zorat</u> <u>op</u> <u>ko</u>   <u>a</u>   <u>patâ</u> <u>zorâ</u> - <u>ŋ</u>   <u>zâk</u>   - <u>kât</u>   <u>den</u>

that be then man big that -Subj. he   - poss. talk

<u>mân</u> <u>nâŋg</u> - <u>ip.</u>

neg. listen - he did.

BU 8: Sentence

<u>Katep</u> <u>zo</u>   <u>keŋgât</u>   - <u>ŋâ</u> <u>op</u> - <u>ŋâ</u>   <u>ko</u>   <u>a</u> <u>no</u>   - <u>bap</u>

child that fear   - his behomo-comp. then man hit me-he might

<u>sâ</u>   - <u>m</u>   <u>ko</u> <u>laŋ</u>   <u>min</u> - <u>ziŋgâ</u> -<u>m</u>   <u>ar</u> - <u>ip.</u>

speak-homo. then regardless get-them   -homo. go - he did

'The canoes took men and women ferrying them back and
forth. They continued then, they entered one canoe. A
man spoke and two women got in aṇd a man too. The man
was a nephew of the woman. The young ferry operator spoke
like this, "You are a big man so get off and wait. This
canoe is not big. It is only small. It is only fit for
those two to go on it." He spoke like that and the man
said, "You, a child speak. I will not listen to what you
say. This canoe is good and fit, we will all go in it."
He spoke like that and as he would not take heed to the
young man. The young man would have said∧but was afraid
that the man would hit him so contrary to his better
judgement he took them all and set out.'

7.1.2   Procedural Paragraph

The procedural paragraph is used to express steps in a procedure to be followed. Paragraphs of this type are not generally embedded in other paragrpahs, but occur rather in procedural discourse.

The Procedural Paragraph is made up of from two to eight steps. The setting of the paragraph is optionally embedded as a phrase or clause in the first step. Two alternates may be expressed by the use of a contrast paragraph filling one of the steps.

Chart 20.

Procedural Paragraph

+ Step $^{2-8}$

Independent Clause

Sentence

Paragraph types:

Exposition
Paraphrase
Narrative
Warning
Contrast
Identical
   Predicate

Procedural Paragraph Examples:

P -1

Step 1: Exposition Paragraph

   Text: Sentence

"Kopi   topkwap   - ŋâ   teŋqâ - ŋâ   pa - nat."
Coffee   begin homo.- comp. rows - its put - we will

     Exposition 1: Independent Clause

Zo   ko   teŋqâ - ŋâ   nain   fit.
That then rows - its nine feet

     Exposition 2: Independent Clause

Zo   yatâ   zor - en pa   - nat.
That like that that - loc. put it - we will

Step 2: Sentence

Teŋqâ - ŋâ topkwap   - ŋâ   pa - m   ko   pa   - m
Rows - its begin homo.- comp. put- homo. then put - homo.

kin   ko kopi topkwap   - ŋâ   hân   - ân
stand homo. then coffee begin homo.- comp. ground- loc.

pâ - nam   ko   kopi ândâ - ŋâ hân - ân
put- ready to homo. then coffee roots-its ground - loc.

âmbi   gei - bap   zo   mânâŋgât - men.
down below descend - it will that cut off - we do

Step 3:   Narrative Paragraph

   BU 1:   Independent Clause

Ândâ -ŋâ   kwâk - ŋan   âi - m   ze   - map.

Roots- its   top - its loc. go- homo. stay- it does

   BU 2:   Sentence

Zo ar - i   zorâ - ŋâ   hân   - qât   kelâk - ŋâ

That go-it herero. that - Subj. ground-poss.   fat   - its

ze - m   ândi - ap   zorâ - ŋâ   pind   - i

stay-homo.   live - it has that-Subj.   give it -it hetero.

kopi   oksâ   - map.

coffee get up - it does

   'Having begun the garden we put the rows. The rows are
nine feet apart. We put them like that. Having begun and
being ready to plant the coffee trees, then we cut off the
lower roots that would go down so the trees have roots
going out close to the surface of the soil. The roots will
go there where the nutrition of the soil is and the roots
will take that nutrition and give it to the tree so
that it grows up.'

Procedural Paragraph Examples:

P-2

Step 1: Sentence

Kâm - ŋâ karâmbut tâkâ - m   zâi   - m - ŋâ
Shoot- its   three   arrive-homo. ascend-homo- comp.

binbin - âk kir - i   ko   kât   ŋâi mi - men.
upright - lim. stand-it hetero. comp. stone a get - we do

Step 2: Sentence

Nak paŋâ   me - m   ko   tâk dii - m   ko   kopi
Tree middle get - homo.comp. vine lead - homo.comp. coffee

qoot - ŋan   âi saaq - indâ   ko   qwâlantenâksâ - m
tips - its loc.go tie it - we hetero comp. bend   - homo.

qâ - i   nebut - ŋâ kwâk - ŋan   âi ze   - m   ko.
come - it hetero.other-its top - its loc.go recline-homo. comp .

bon   -ŋâ âlip yatâ   âsaqei - map.
fruit -its good like that appear - it does

Step 3: Sentence

Âsaqe - i ko sându - m mândâli - men.
Appear - it comp. pick - homo. crush it - we do

 ʳWhen three shoots sprout and grow up staight we
take a stone. We take the mid shoot and tie a vine
to it near its extremity, with the stone on the other
end of the vine, and it bends down and the other branches
are above it. With the tree growing in that shape it
produces fruit well. When the fruit appears we pick it
and   crush it.'

Procedural Paragraph Examples;

P-3

Step 1: Sentence

Kopi   sându - m   - ŋâ   ɯ̇râ   karâmbut kimembut yatâ

Coffee pick - homo.- comp. bag   three   four   like that

mândâlimândâli - ŋaŋ pa   - indâ   kin   tâ   - i

    crusher   - loc. put - we hetero. stand-homo. stay-it hetero.

ko   mândâle-m   kin   tap   - men.

comp. crush-homo. stand-homo.stay-we do

Step 2: Sentence

Mândale - indâ   oto-yân   ɡei   tâp - maŋ.

Crush it - we hetero. trough-loc. descend stay- it does.

Step 3: Sentence

Oto   patâ patâ tâ   - i   ko   too   kândom

Trough big big stay-it hetero. comp. water first

loke - indâ   ɡei   - maŋ.

pour - we hetero. descend - it does

Step 4: Sentence

Saŋɡon   pisuk pa - m   -ŋâ loke   - indâ   ar - i

Wash homo. all   put -homo. -comp.pour out-we hetero.go-it hetero.

ko   du   too zaɡât ɡu   - men.

comp.again water second pour in - we do

Step 5:   Sentence

<u>Guꬶ - indâ</u>   <u>ꬶei</u>   <u>ko</u> <u>sâktâꬵ</u>   <u>buputâꬵ</u>
Pour in-we hetero.descend comp. skins   pieces

<u>mulun - âk</u> <u>simbâꬵ</u> <u>pa   - men.</u>
carefully ᾽ᾳ pick out put- we do.

Step 6:   Sentnece

<u>Pa - m</u>   <u>ko</u>   <u>karâmbu - ꬵâ</u> <u>too</u>   <u>ꬶu -   m</u>
put - homo.comp.   three - its water pour in- homo.

<u>ko</u>   <u>yen</u>   <u>pa   - men.</u>
comp. nothing put it-we do.

<u>Me   - m - ꬵâ</u>   <u>kamân - âꬶ</u>   <u>pa - men.</u>
get - homo-comp. village - loc.   put - we.do

   'Having picked the coffee cherries we put three or
four bags full by the crusher and then we stand crushing
it. We crush it and the beans go down into the troughs.
There are large troughs there. Then we pour in the first
water and having washed it we pour the water out. We pour
out the water and it goes, then we pour in the second
water and carefully pick off the skins and pieces and
put them aside. Then we pour in the third water then just
put it aside. We take and put in the village (or
coffee drying place).'

Procedural Paragraph Examples

P-4

Step 1: Independent Clause

Sâlâpku - men.

Count   - we do

Step 2: Sentence

Narâk karâmbut o - i   ko   qâsu - m   ik - men.

Time   three   be-it hetero. comp. hold it- homo. see it-we do

Step 3: Sentence

Sâp karâmbut zo mân kikerereksâ - i   ko

Time third   that neg. ferment -it hetero. then

ekap   mânâŋgât luq - indâ   gâ - i   ko

banana leaf cut it homo. carry it-we hetero.come-it hetero. then

kwârâku - m   kusik - ŋan   tuu - men.

cover it - homo. good - its loc. make - we do

Step 4 Warning Paragraph

   Unwanted Result: Condition Result Paragraph

      Condition: Sentnece

Tuum - m   tâ - indâ   ze - m   ko kwâk - ŋan

Make it- homo. stay - we hetero. recline-homo. comp. top-its loc.

mâtâp - tâŋ mâik ŋâi kin - map.

opening- spec. small a stand - it does

Result: Exposition Paragraph

Text: Sentnece

Zor - en   gâbâ ko   pibâ ŋâi kopi   gâsu   - i   ko
That - loc. from cont. wind a coffee hold it - it hetero. comp.

mân alâge - map.
neg. rot - it does

Exposition: Independent Clause

Um   - ŋandâ gilik - ŋoor - âk tâp - map.
Inside- its Subj. sap - its acc.- lim. stay - it does.

Evasion: Condition Result Paragraph

Condition: Sentence

Kwâraku   - m   kusik tuu - men.
Cover it - homo. good make it- we do

Result Sentence

Zo ko kaapum - ŋandâ gâsu   - i ko kerereksâ - map.
That then breath - its Subj. hold it-it comp. ferment - it does.

Step 5: Contrast Paragraph

Contrast 1: Sentence

Alâge - i   ko sâp mamim - ŋâ zi ko   nen
Ferment-it hetero.then time thumb - its this then we

kopi   saŋgon - men.
coffee wash   - we do

Contrast 2:   Sentence

<u>Kopi</u>   <u>doŋbeŋ</u> <u>patâ</u> <u>zorâ</u> - <u>ŋâ</u>   <u>ko</u>   <u>sâp</u>   <u>kimembur</u>- <u>âk</u>

Coffee much   very   that - Subj. cont. time   four   - lim.

<u>tap</u> - <u>ŋâ</u>   <u>alâge</u>- <u>i</u>   <u>ko</u>   <u>saŋgon</u> - <u>men</u>.

stay homo-comp. ferment- it hetero. then wash   - we do

'We count the days. On the third day we feel it to

see how it is. If it has not fermented on the third

day, then we cut banana leaves and carry them to the

trough and cover the trough well. If when we do it we

leave a small opening on top then a wind will get in

from there and take hold of the coffee and it will not

rot. It will stay with sap inside. So we cover it well

so that its breath takes hold of it and it ferments.

When it rots then, on the fifth day we wash the coffee.

But much coffee rots after staying only four days, so

then we wash it.'

Procedural Paragraph Examples:

P-5

Step 1: Independent Clause

<u>Zor</u> - at <u>ombo</u> - <u>ŋâ</u> <u>kuku</u> - <u>ŋan</u> <u>zor</u> - <u>en</u>

That - ref. board - its hammered - its loc. that - loc.

<u>pa</u> - <u>men</u>.

put it - we do

Step 2: Sentnece

<u>Zo</u> <u>ko</u> <u>kândom</u> <u>omboŋ</u> - <u>an</u> <u>pa</u> - <u>men</u> <u>zorâ</u> - <u>ŋâ</u>

that then first board - loc. put it - we do that - Inst.

<u>me</u> - <u>m</u> -<u>ŋâ</u> <u>ma</u> - <u>yân</u> <u>mân</u> <u>pa</u> - <u>men</u>.

get - homo.-comp. sunshine - loc. neg. put it - we do

Step 3: Sentnece

<u>Pâ</u> - <u>indâ</u> <u>ko</u> <u>hilâm</u> <u>kânok</u> <u>tâp</u> - <u>map</u>.

Put it - we hetero. comp. day one sit/stay-it does

Step 4: Exposition Paragraph

    Text: Sentence

<u>Zaqât-ŋan</u> <u>zor</u> - <u>en</u> <u>ko</u> <u>me</u> - <u>indâ</u> <u>ma</u> - <u>yân</u> <u>âi</u> -<u>map</u>

Two -loc that -loc. cont. get it-we hetero.sun-loc. go -it does

    Exposition 1: Independent Clause

<u>Ma</u> <u>nâŋgâ</u> - <u>map</u>.

Sunshine feel - it does

    Exposition 2 : Independent Clause

<u>Ma</u> - <u>ŋâ</u> <u>ike</u> - <u>bap</u>.

Sun - Subj. shine on it- it will

Step 5: Sentnece

<u>Sâk</u> - <u>ŋâ</u>   <u>eŋ</u> - <u>indâ</u>   <u>kikpâuk</u> <u>yatâ</u>   <u>o</u> - <u>i</u>

skin - its   see - we hetero. split like that be - it hetero.

<u>ko</u>   <u>du</u>   <u>me</u>   - <u>indâ</u>   <u>âi</u> <u>sânduk</u> - <u>ŋan</u> <u>âi</u>

comp. again take it-we hetero. go shade   - its loc. go

<u>tâp</u>   - <u>mɑp</u>.

stay - it does

Step 6: Sent nce

<u>Ma</u>   <u>eŋ</u>   - <u>indâ</u>   <u>utuk</u> <u>o</u> - <u>i</u>   <u>ko</u>   <u>dum</u>

sun see it-we hetero. shaded be-it hetero.comp. again

<u>me</u> - <u>indâ</u>   <u>âi</u> <u>ma</u>   <u>nâŋâ</u> - <u>map</u>.

get it-we hetero.go shunshine feel   - it does

S
Step 7: Sentence

<u>Ike</u> - <u>m</u> - <u>ŋâ</u>   <u>me</u> -<u>m</u>   <u>purik</u> <u>purik</u> <u>kândât</u>

Shine -homo. - comp. take-homo. turn turn   back

<u>pikpik</u> - <u>ŋɑot</u>   <u>melâŋ</u> - <u>men</u>.

ache   - its with turn it- we do

'We put it there on board trays. When we first put
it on borads we do not right away put it in the sun.
We put it aside in a sheltered place for one day. Then
on the second day we take it out into the sun. It feels
the sun. The sun shines on it. We look at its skin and if
it is cracking we put it in the shade again. When we see
that the sun is shaded we put it out again and it feels the
sun. The sun shines on it and as it   dries we turn it
and turn it while our backs ache with the work.'

7.1.3

Quote Paragraph

The function of the quote paragraph is the presentation
of quoted speech with a suitable introduction. The quote
paragraph is marked by obligatory introduction and quote
tagmemes. An optional quote closure may also occur. The
introduction is generally closed by an independent   form
of the verb sâ 'to speak'. When the optional quote
closure occurs it too includes a form of the verb sâ 'to
speak'. This type of paragraph may occur in all types
of discourse but is most commonly found in Hortative and
Narrative Discourses. It often occurs embedded in other
paragraphs.

Note that the introduction is obligatory and the closure
is optional. This distinguishes the Quote Paragraph from the
Quotation Clause. In the Quotation Clause there is no
introduction and the quote is obligatorily followed by
a form of the verb sâ 'to speak' in the predicate slot
of the clause.

Another contrast between the Quote Paragraph and the
Quotation Clause is the length of quote included. The
Quotation Clause generally takes as quote a clause or at
most a brief sentence. The Quote paragraph may have
a whole paragraph or discourse filling the Quote tagmeme.

The filler of the introduction tagmeme of the
Quote Paragraph may begin with any of the following
conjunction forms;

zo ko   'that then'   zorat   'that,

zorat opŋâ 'that being so' Ҡa 'but'

oi 'and' or the exclamation âiop.

Chart 21

Quote Paragraph

+ Introduction	+ Quote	± Quote Closure
Independent Clause Sentence with final form of one of these verbs:	Independent Clause Sentence Alternative Paragraph Narrative Paragraph	A form of the verb sâ 'speak' or yatâ sâ'speak' like that'

sâ 'to speak'
nâŋgâ 'to think'
âigu 'to ask him'
mâsikâ 'to ask him'
duku 'to tell him'
kwâkâŋaŋgâ 'to
        teach him'

A form of the verb sâ 'speak' often occurs with another verb from this list. Some Komba speakers do not accept a quote introduction as valid unless it includes a form of the verb sâ 'to speak'. An exception is when the verb nâŋgâ 'to think' occurs. as this is on its own an acceptable verb for introducing a quote of a persons thoughts, feelings or desires. The other verbs when used in an introduction are commonly followed by a form of sâ 'speak'.

duku - m sâ - ip.
tell him-homo. speak- he did
'telling him he said.'

Quote Paragraph Examples

Q-1

Introduction: Sentence

<u>Ɗarân</u> <u>nep</u> <u>zi</u> <u>bon</u> - <u>ŋâ</u> <u>o</u> - <u>i</u>   <u>ko</u>   <u>sâ</u> - <u>bi</u>.
Later   work   this fruit -its be - it hetero.comp. speak- they will

Quote: Sentence

"<u>Nâ</u> - <u>ŋâ</u>   <u>sa</u> - <u>ndâ</u>   <u>muyaqi</u> - <u>ap</u>."
 I -Subj.   speak - I hetero. appear - it has

Closure: Independent Clause

<u>Yatâ</u>   <u>sâ</u> - <u>be</u>.
Like that speak-they might

'Later when this work of airstrip building bears
fruit they will say, "I spoke and caused it to come
into being." They might speak like that.'

Quote Paragraph Examples

Q-2

Introduction : Independent Clause

<u>Zâk</u> - <u>ŋâ</u> <u>yatâ</u> <u>sâ</u> - <u>ip</u>.

He - Subj. like that speak - he did

Quote: Alternative Paragraph

  Alternative: Independent Clause

"<u>Gâ</u> - <u>gâr</u> - <u>en</u> <u>hân</u> <u>âlipŋâ</u> <u>ŋâi</u> <u>ta</u> - <u>ap</u>.

You - poss. - loc. ground good very sit/stay-it has

  Alternative link

<u>mo</u>?"

or (not)

   'He spoke like that. "Is there a piece of very good land at your place, or not?"'

Quote Paragraph Examples

Q-3

Introduction: Sentence

Haṇsâ   - i   kamân zo - bâ goknâ   a   ṇâi
Be dawn   - it hetero.place that- from inhabitant man a

kut - ṇâ Galan zâk- ṇâ   itâ   sâ   - ip.
name - hisGalan he-Subj. like this speak- he did

Quote: Exposition Paragraph

   Text: Independent Clause

"Zi   nâ - gât   nâi
This   I - poss. bush spirit

   Expo.1: Sentence

Zirâ - ṇâ ṫik   ze - m' ko   mam   ot - ni   - map.
This - Subj. secretly stay-homo.comp.mother be-to me - he does.

   Expo. 2: Sentnece

Mam   ot - ni   -gi   sinkâlam - nan   sot gobet - nan
Mother be -to me-he hetero.garden - my loc. and under-my loc.

tâtalek   ze. - map."
wealth   stay- it does.

    'Next morning a man from that village named Galan
spoke like this, "This is my bush spirit. This one
secretly takes care of me. He takes care of me so
     in
that˄my garden and about me I have wealth."

7.1.4

Dialogue Paragraph

The Dialogue Paragraph most commonly occurs embedded in narrative paragraphs or in narrative discourse. The Dialogue Paragraph is used to express reasoning or discussion and often closes with a conclusion.

The Paragraph is made up of an obligatory speech 1, an optional speech 2 expounded by a negative response, or an optional speech 3 expounded by a positive response, and an optional speech 4 expounded by a conclusion.

The Speech 1 tagmeme is expounded by a Quote Paragraph.

Chart 22

Dialogue Paragraph

+ Speech 1	± (± Speech 2	± Speech 3)	± Speech 4
Quote Paragraph	Independent Clause	Independent Clause	Independent Clause
	Sentence	Sentence	Exposition Paragraph

Dialogue Paragraph Examples

D-1

Speech : Quote Paragraph

   Introduction: Sentence

Si - ŋâ yen - âk ziŋgit   kir - i

Eye - his nothing-lim. see - them homo.   stand- it hetero.

ŋei   ek - ŋâ keŋât - ziŋâ op - ŋâ.

descend see it-comp. fear   - their be - comp.

toren toren kâru -m - ŋâ   ga - ne.

side   side search -homo.-comp.   come - they hetero.

kiap   - kât a - râp - ŋâ a kâtikŋâ

patrol officer-poss. man-pl. - his man strong

mâsikâ - ziŋâ - ne   sâ - we.

ask   - them -they hetero. speak- they did

   Quote: Independent Clause

"A zi mân ik - sen.

Man this neg. see him- we have

Speech 4: Independent Clause

Ikâ zor - en ari - ap?"

Where that - loc. go - he has

     'They were afraid because they had been under the
water and seen the dead man's eyes just staring at them
as he stood there. Being afraid they continued searching
and searched both sides of the river then the Government
men asked them about it and they said, "We have not seen
this man. Where has he gone?"'

Dialogue Paragraph Examples

D-2

Speech 1: Quote Paragraph

   Introduction: Sentence

<u>Ge   - m</u>   <u>ga   - m</u>   <u>ko</u>   <u>sâ   - we</u>.
Descend-homo. come -homo. comp.   speak - they did

   Quote: Independent Clause

<u>Neŋ - gât</u> <u>bâu</u> <u>sâ   - we</u>.
Us   - poss.pig   speak- they did

Speech 2: Exposition Paragraph

   Text; Sentnece

<u>Sâ   - ne</u>   <u>ko</u> <u>neŋ - gât</u> <u>sâ   - wen</u>.
Speak-they hetero.comp. us-   poss.   speak - we did

   Expo. 1: Independent Clause

"<u>Zeŋ - gât   buŋâ</u>."
You   - poss. neg.

   Expo. 2 Sentnece

"<u>Hulin   ko   - m</u> <u>gaa   - m</u> <u>o - m</u> <u>ne   - m</u>
Wild one   kill it-homo cut it - homo.cook it-homo. eat it-homo.

<u>t   - en</u>."
stay- we have.

    'They came down then they said, "That is our pig,"
They spoke then we said, "It is ours. It is not yours.
It is a wild one that we killed and cut up and cooked and
are eating."'

7.1.5

Condition- Result Paragraph

The Condition- Result Paragraph expresses a basis or reason and then in sequence a resulting action and/or conclusion. Generally the Result is active and the conclusion is stative or equational.

The paragraph is made up of an obligatory condition and an obligatory result or conclusion. In some constructions both a result and conclusion occur. Initial and final peripheries are optional.

When the condition begins with wangât 'why', the result must be manifested by zorat 'that' or a form that includes zorat 'that.'

Fillers of the condition may begin with any of the conjunctions: zo ko 'that then', ka 'but', oi 'and' or wangât 'why'.

The result may optionally begin with any one of the conjunctions: zo ko 'that then' zorat ko 'that then,' zorat opŋâ 'that being so.' zorat opŋâ ko 'that being so then.' The function of these conjunctions is to closely link the result to the condition.

Chart 23

Condition-Result Paragraph

+·Condition	+(± Result	± Conclusion)
Independent Clause	Independent Clause	Independent Clause
Sentence	Sentence	Sentence
Quote	Coord. Paragraph	
Paragraph		
Condition- Result Paragraph	Condition- Result Paragraph	
	Exposition Paragraph	

Condition-Result Paragraph Examples

C-R-1

Condition: Condition-Result Paragraph

   Condition; Independent Clause

<u>Ka</u> <u>kuririŋ</u> <u>karâ - m</u>   <u>tâp - map</u>.

But reddish become-homo. stay - it does

    Conclusion: Independent Clause

<u>Zo</u> <u>ko</u> <u>kopi</u>   <u>bâliŋâ</u>.

That cont. coffee   bad

Result: Condition- Result Paragraph

   Condition; Sentnece

<u>Zo</u>   <u>kwâkâ - m</u>   <u>âi</u> <u>mândâli - nat</u>.

That pick - homo.go crush it - we will

    Result: Coordinate Paragraph

      Slot 1: Independent Clause

<u>Zo</u> <u>ko</u> <u>bit - niŋâ</u>   <u>pikpiksâ - map</u>.

That cont. hands-our   ache   - it does

      Coordinate Link:

<u>sot</u>

and

      Slot 2: Independent Clause

<u>Kât</u> <u>doŋbeŋ</u> <u>mâŋ</u> <u>mi - men</u>.

Cash much neg. get - we do.

Conclusion: Independent Clause

<u>Zorâ - ŋ</u> <u>kopi</u> <u>bâliŋâ</u> <u>uap</u>.

that -Subj. coffee bad   be - it has

'But coffee beans that are just becoming red, those are bad coffee. If we pick those and crush the skins off, it causes our hands to ache and we do not get much money for it. That coffee is bad.'

Condition- Result Paragraph Examples

C-R-2

Periphery: Narrative Paragraph

    BU 1: Sentence

<u>Oi</u> <u>net</u>   <u>ga - wet</u>   <u>zo</u>   <u>ko</u>   <u>neb - ân - âk</u>

And we du. come-we du. did that cont. work- loc. - lim.

<u>tap</u>   <u>ma</u>   <u>kin - zet</u>.

stay   continue stands/stay - we du. have

    BU 2: Contrast Paragraph

        Contrast 1: Independent Clause

<u>Kopi</u> <u>ŋâi</u> <u>mân</u> <u>sându - et</u>.

coffee a   neg. pick   - we du. have

        Contrast 2: Independent Clause

<u>Oi</u> <u>Kaunsola</u> <u>takis</u> <u>zo</u>   <u>ko</u>   <u>mârum</u> <u>Erendeŋan</u>   <u>g - e</u>.

and Council tax   that cont. already Erendeŋan come-they have

Condition: Quote Paragraph

   Introduction : Sentence

<u>Oi</u> <u>net</u>   <u>kât</u> <u>ɲâi</u> <u>mân</u> <u>tâ</u> <u>- </u> <u>i</u>   <u>ko</u>   <u>itâ</u>

and we du. cash a   neg. stay- it hetero. then   like this

<u>nâŋg</u>   <u>-</u>   <u>et</u>.

think   - we du. did

    Quote: Exhortation Paragraph

      Basis: Independent Clause

<u>Net</u>   <u>kât</u>   <u>buɲâ</u>.

we du. cash   neg.

      Exhortation: Alternative Paragraph

        Alternative 1: Independent Clause

<u>Gât</u> <u>ko</u>   <u>âlip</u> <u>kât</u> <u>ɲâi</u> <u>pâ̂</u>   <u>-</u> <u>na</u>   <u>gâ</u> <u>-</u> <u>baŋ</u>?

so then   well cash   a   send it - you hetero.come- it will

        Alternative Link

<u>mo</u>

or

Result: Condition- Result Paragraph

   Condition: Independent Clause

<u>Net</u>   <u>kât</u> <u>mân</u> <u>pâ</u> <u>-</u> <u>ndat</u>.

we du. cash neg. put - we du. will

Result :   Sentence

<u>Zo</u>   <u>ko</u>   <u>kalabus</u>   <u>gei</u>   <u>- m</u>   <u>nep</u>   <u>zi</u>   <u>birâ -bet</u>

that then prison   descend -homo. work   this leave it-we du. might

Conclusion: Sentence

<u>Yatâ</u>   <u>nâŋgâ -m</u>   <u>ekap</u>   <u>zi</u>   <u>kwat - gig - et.</u>

like that think-homo.letter this write-you   - we du. have

'We two came and have kept working since then. We

have not stopped to pick any coffee and now the council

tax collectors have come as close as Erendeŋan. As we

have no money we thought like this, "We have no money.

So then would it be alright or not for you to send us

some money?" If we do not pay the tax then we might have

to go to prison and leave this work. Thinking like that

we have written this letter to you.'

7.1.6

Warning Paragraph

The function of the Warning Paragraph is to warn the hearer to take evasive action least something undesireable happens. The Warning Paragraph has two obligatory tagmemes, one an unwanted result and the other an evasion tagmeme.

Either the unwanted result or the evasion may begin with the conjunction: <u>zorat</u> <u>opᵑâ</u> <u>ko</u> 'that being so then', or <u>zorat</u> <u>op</u> <u>ko</u> 'that being so then'. However the conjunction cannot occur in both fillers.

The Warning Paragraph most commonly occurs embedded in a Narrative Paragraph or in Narrative or Procedural Discourse.

Chart 24

Warning Paragraph

+ Unwanted Result   + Evasion

Independent   Independent
Clause   Clause

Sentnece   Sentence

Narrative   Narrative
Paragraph   Paragraph

Condition-   Condition-
Result   Result
Paragraph   Result

Warning Paragraph

W-1

Unwanted result: Narrative

    BU 1:   Sentence

Tuu   - m   tâ - indâ   ge   - m   ko   kwâk-ŋan

make - homo.stay- we hetero.descend-homo.comp. top - its loc.

mâtâp   - tâŋ mâik ŋâi   kin   - map.

hole   - spec.small a   stand - it does

    BU 2: Sentnece

Zor. - en   gâbâ ko   pibâ - ŋâ ŋâi kopi   zo

that - loc. from conts.wind - its a   coffee   that

gâsu   - i   ko mân ɑlâge   - map.

take hold- it hetero.comp.neg. rot/ferment - it does

    BU 3:   Independent Clause

Um   - ŋandâ   gilik - ŋoor   - âk   tâp - map.

Inside- its Subj. sap - its with-lim.   stay- it does

Evasion: Condition- Result Paragraph

    Condition: Sentence

Kwârâku   - m   kusik tuu   - men.

cover it   - homo. good   make it - we do

Result: Sentence

<u>Zo</u>   <u>ko</u>   <u>kaapum   -   ŋandâ</u>   <u>ŋâsu   - i</u>   <u>ko</u>

that then   breath   - its Subj.   take hold-it   comp.

<u>kerereksâ   - map</u>.

ferment   - it does

'We keep working with it and if we happened to
leave a small hole open in the covering on the top.
Some air may get in there and take hold of the coffee
so that it does not ferment. It just stays with its
own juice inside it. To avoid that we cover it well.
Therefore its breath takes hold of it and it ferments.'

Warning Paragraph examples;

W-2

Unwanted result: Condition- Result Paragraph

   Condition: Sentence

Yen   - âk   binbin zâi   kin - map.

nothing-lâm.   upright ascend stand- it does

    Result; Sentnece

Zo ko ma - ŋâ ko - i   ilum - ŋâ âmbârâŋgâ-map.

That then sun -Subj. hit - it hetero.leaf-its scorch - it does

    Conclusion: Independent Clause

Bon   - ŋâ yat   - ik.

fruit - its like that- lim.

Evasion: Sentnece

Zorat op - ŋâ ko para   saag - indâ   âi

That be-comp. then horizontal tie it- we hetero. go

ze   - m   ko   bon- ŋâ âlip yatâ   âsage   - map.

recline-homo. comp. fruit-its well like that appear - it does

   'If it grows just upright then the sun strikes it
and the leaves scorch, and the fruit likewise. That being
so we tie the limbs down horizontal and they go out and
the tree bears well.'

7.1.7

Identical Predicate Paragraph

The Identical Predicate Paragraph is made up of from two to nine tagmemes in sequence which have identical verbs in the predicate. The filler of the slot 1 tagmeme may begin with the conjunctions _ka_ 'but', _zorat_ 'that', or the exclamations _bâi_ or _bati_ meaning 'enough of that'.

In shorter paragraphs of from two to three slots the non-initial slot fillers generally only rephrase the text of the filler of the initial slot. Longer forms of the paragraph list differing subjects objects or locations involved in identical action.

The Paragraph is found most commonly in Procedural Discourse.

Chart 25

Indentical Predicate Paragraph

+ Slot 1	+ Slots 2 $^{1-8}$	± Summary
Independent Clause	Independent Clause	Independent Clause
Sentence	Sentence	Sentence
	Exposition Paragraph	
	Exhortation Paragraph	

Identical Predicate Paragraph Examples

IP-1

Periphery;   Sentence

<u>Bâi</u>   <u>kamân - ŋât</u> <u>den</u>   <u>siŋgi itâ</u>   <u>sa</u>

enough village-poss. talk   of like this speak-I hetero.

<u>nâŋ   - ŋâ</u>.

listen - you should.

Slot 1: Independent Clause

<u>Mumefoka</u>   <u>sombâ</u>   <u>mo - ip</u>.

Mumefoka   aged   die - she did.

Slot 2: Sentnece

<u>Tap</u>   <u>ko</u>   <u>Anduŋ</u>   <u>mo - ip</u>.

stay-homo.comp Andung die - he did.

Slot 3: Senteace

<u>Zâim</u>   <u>ko</u>   <u>katep</u> <u>ŋâi</u> <u>Rabaul</u> <u>ĝâbâ</u> <u>ŋa</u> <u>tap</u>

ascend-homo.comp. child a Rabaul from come stay-homo.

<u>ko</u>   <u>mâsek</u>   <u>buŋ</u> <u>laŋ   - âk</u>   <u>mo - ip</u>.

comp. sickness neg. regardless - lim. die - he did.

Slot 4:   Exposition Paragraph

   Text :   Sentnece

<u>Tâ   - indâ</u>   <u>ko</u>   <u>miti</u>   <u>nep - ŋan</u>   <u>gâbâ</u>   <u>ambân</u>

stay - we hetero.comp. mission work - her loc.from woman

<u>ŋâi</u>   <u>mo   - ip</u>.

a   die - she did.

   Exposition;   Independent Clause

<u>Goroka</u>   <u>gâbâ</u>   <u>Muin</u>   <u>zi</u>   <u>gâ   - ip</u>.

Goroka   from   Muin Village   here   come - she did

Summary: Independent Clause

<u>Nâ   - gât</u>   <u>namâ</u>   <u>zir - en -âk</u>   <u>mu-mu</u>   <u>zi</u>   <u>u - e</u>.

me - poss. clan house this-loc.-lim. deceased these be-they have

     'Alright, Let me speak village news and you listen.
Mumefoka, the aged one died. We stayed a time then
Anduŋ died too. We lived on a while then a young person
who had come from Rabaul and stayed a time died although
he had not been sick. We stayed and then a woman came
from doing mission work and died. She came from Goroka
to Muin village here. All these deaths were of people
from my clan.'

Identical Predicate Paragraph Examples

IP - 2

Slot 1:   Sentence

<u>Zorat</u> <u>Koŋe</u> <u>zâk</u> <u>zikŋâ</u>   <u>sombem</u>   - <u>ân</u> - <u>âk</u>   <u>oŋep</u>

That Konge he   himself   village space-loc.-lim. roofing

<u>me</u> - <u>m</u>   <u>tuu</u> - <u>ŋik.</u>

get - homo. make it- he should

Slot 2:   Independent Clause

<u>Ununu</u>   <u>zâk</u> <u>zikŋâ</u>   <u>sombem</u>   - <u>ân</u> - <u>âk</u> <u>sosaieti</u> - <u>ŋâ</u>

Ununu village he   himself   village space-loc.-lim. socitey-his

<u>tuu</u>   - <u>ŋik.</u>

make - he should

Slot 3:   Condition- Result Paragraph

     Condition: Sentence

<u>Sikam</u> <u>zâk</u> <u>mârum</u> <u>sombem</u>   - <u>ân</u>   - <u>âk</u>   <u>oŋep</u>

Sikam   he   already village space-loc. - lim.   kunai grass

<u>namâ</u>   <u>tuu</u> - <u>ŋi</u>   <u>ta</u> - <u>ap.</u>

building   make - he hetero. stay - it has

     Result: Sentence

<u>Zo</u> <u>kânda</u>   - <u>ŋâ</u>   <u>kapa</u> <u>me</u> - <u>m</u>   <u>tuu</u> -<u>bam</u>

that dismantle - comp. iron get - homo. make - ready to, sing.

<u>tuuŋ</u>   - <u>ik.</u>

make it - he should

Slot 4: Independent Clause

Kâmbuk   yatik   tuu - ik.

Kambuk village like that make it- he should.

Slot 5: Independent Clause

Sape   tuug   - ik.

Sape village make it - he should

Slot 6: Independent Clause

Gumum   tuug   - ik.

Gumum village make it- he should

'Therefore Konge village should get roofing iron and build a society store in the village square. Ununu village itself should build a society store in the village square, Bikam village has already built a kunai roof store in the village square. Having dismantled that one they should prepare to build an iron roofed store in the village. Kâmbuk village should build a store like that. Sape village should build one. Gumum village should build one.'

7.1.8

Paraphrase Paragraph

In the Paraphrase Paragraph the predicates of the
two fillers are related in meaning but not identical.
So the paragraph presents a Text and then a Restatement
which adds or omits certain details and has a verb of
similar meaning in the predicate.

The two features of the Paraphrase Paragraph are
an Obligatory Text and Obligatory Restatement. The
fillers of the Text and the Restatement have a common
subject and object. This contrasts with the Identical
Predicate Paragraph where the subject and / or object
may be different but the predicate filler is identical.

The Paragraph is found embedded in other paragraph
types such as Exhortation and Exposition Paragraphs.
It occurs most commonly in Hortatory and Procedural
discourse.

Chart 26

Paraphrase Paragraph

+ Text   + Restatement

Independent   Independent
Clause   Clause

Sentence   Sentence

Quote
Paragraph

Paraphrase Paragraph Examples

Paraph.-1

Text: Independent Clause

<u>Moneŋ</u> <u>yatâ</u>   <u>ziŋgâ</u>   - <u>weŋ</u>.

money like that give them-we did

Restatement: Independent Clause

<u>Yatâ</u>   <u>parâ</u>   - <u>weŋ</u>.

like that put it - we did

    'We gave them that amount of money. We paid that

amount.'

Paraphrase Paragraph Examples

Paraph.-2

Text: Quote Paragraph

   Introduction: Independent Clause

<u>Zo</u>   <u>ya</u>   <u>s - ap</u>.

That like that speak - he has

   Quote: Independent Clause

"<u>Moŋèŋ</u>   <u>a</u> <u>kânok</u>   <u>a</u>   <u>kânok</u>."

 money   man one   man one

Restatement: Independent Clause

<u>A</u>   <u>ambân</u> <u>katep</u> <u>ziŋ</u>   <u>pisuk</u>   <u>a</u> <u>kânok</u>

male female child they subj. all man one

<u>a</u> <u>kânok</u>   <u>s - ap</u>.

man one   speak- he has

   'He spoke like that, "Twenty 10 toea pieces each."
He said that every boy and girl must pay two kina for
schooling.'

7.1.9

Exposition Paragraph

The Exposition Paragraph is made up of an optional periphery, an obligatory Text and an obligatory Exposition. The two extra expositions are optional.

The Exposition Paragraph has a high rate of occurrence, being found embedded in most other Paragraph types including Narrative, Contrast, Procedural, Condition-Result, Identical Predicate, Command-Fulfillment and Dialogue Paragraphs. It is found in all types of discourse. The function of the Paragraph is to present a text and then to expound or explain one of the various items of that text.

The setting for the paragraph is usually embedded in the text but may occur as a separate item in the periphery. It is not common to find more than two expositions in one construction. When two expositions of a text are alternative expositions this is indicated by the inclusion of nâmbut 'some' or doŋbeŋ 'many' in the subject or object of Expo. 2., or of Expo. 1 and 2.

The Text may begin with any one of the conjunctions; Gât ko 'so then', Zo ko 'that then', Ka 'but', Oi 'and' or Zirat 'this'.

The first and second expositions may begin with any one of the conjunctions; Zo ko 'that then, Zorat 'that', Zorat ko 'that then', Zirat 'this' or Oi 'and'.

Chart 27

Exposition Paragraph

+ Text	+ Exposition 1	± Exposition 2[2]
Independent Clause	Independent Clause	Independent Clause
Sentence	Sentence	Sentence
Quote Paragraph	Antith. Paragraph	Contrast paragraph
Paragphrase Paragraph	Condition- Result Paragraph	
	Paraphrase Paragraph	

Exposition Paragraph Examples

E-1

Text: Sentnece

<u>Wiksâ</u>   <u>- m</u>   <u>- ŋâ</u>   <u>ko</u>   <u>goot - ŋâ</u> <u>mânâŋgât - men</u>.

straighten up-homo. -comp. comp. shoot - its cut it - we do

Exposition 1: Identical Predicate Paragraph

    Slot 1: Sentence

<u>Mânâŋgâr - indâ</u>   <u>ko</u>   <u>goot - ŋâ</u> <u>zagât</u> <u>takâ</u>   <u>- m</u>

cut it - wehhetero. comp. shoot-its   two arrive - homo.

<u>zâi</u>   <u>- bap</u>.

ascend - it will

    Slot 2: Sentence

<u>Bâran</u> <u>- ŋâ</u> <u>zagât</u> <u>takâ</u> <u>- m</u>   <u>zâi</u>   <u>- bap</u>.

branch - its   two   arrive-homo. ascend- it will

Exposition 2: Sentnece

<u>Nâmbutŋâ</u> <u>mânâŋgâr - indâ</u>   <u>ko</u>   <u>goot   - ŋâ</u>

some   cut it - we hetero.comp. shoot - its.

<u>karâmbut</u>   <u>zâi</u>   <u>- bap</u>.

three   ascend- it will

    'It having straightened up we cut the shoots of the
young coffee tree so that there are two shoots that will
grow up. Sometimes we cut them so that there are three
shhots that will grow up.'

Exposition Paragraph Examples

E-2

Text: Independent Clause

<u>Narâkŋâ</u> <u>Hube</u> <u>âi</u> – <u>wen</u>   <u>zor</u>   – <u>en</u>   <u>ko</u>   <u>kanu</u> <u>patâ</u> <u>buŋâ.</u>

time   Hube go – we did that – loc cont. canoe big   neg.

Expo. 1: Independent Clause

<u>Kanu</u>   <u>mâiktârâ</u>   <u>ŋâi</u> <u>zagât.</u>

canoe   small   very two

Expo 2: Contrast Paragraph

   Contrast 1: Sentnece

<u>Zagâr</u> – <u>âk</u>   <u>min</u> – <u>ziŋgâ</u> – <u>m</u>   <u>âi</u> – <u>m</u>   <u>gâ</u> – <u>m</u>

two   – lim. take – them – homo. go – homo. come – homo.

<u>tâ</u>   – <u>ip.</u>

stay – it did

   Contrast 2: Independent Clause

<u>Mariŋâ</u> <u>ko</u>   <u>karâmbut</u> <u>o</u> – <u>ip.</u>

owner   cont.   third   be – he did

'At the time that we went to Hube there was not a
large canoe. There were two small canoes. They were
able to ferry just two people at a time. The ferry man
being a third in the canoe.'

Exposition Paragraph Examples

E-2

Text: Independent Clause

<u>Koŋe</u>   <u>Socaieti</u> <u>pa</u>   <u>- namen.</u>

Konge Village Society   put it - we are about to

Expo: Antithetical Paragraph

   Thesis: Sentence

<u>Nâŋgâ</u> <u>- m</u>   <u>ko</u>   <u>a</u>   <u>kânok - ŋâ</u>   <u>tuu</u>   <u>- bâmap</u>

hear   - homo. comp. man   one   - Subj. make it-he is about to

<u>sâ</u>   <u>- m</u>   <u>t</u>   <u>- e.</u>

speak - homo. stay   - you pl. do

   Rejection: Independent Clause

<u>Buŋâ.</u>

neg.

   Antithesis: Independent Clause

<u>Koŋe</u>   <u>Sosaieti</u>   <u>pâ</u>   <u>- namen.</u>

Konge village Society   put it - we are about to

   'We are about to set up a Konge village cooperative

society. Hearing that you are now saying that it   is

just one man's project. That is not so. It is a Konge

village cooperative society that we are setting up.'

Exposition Paragraph Examples

E-3

Text: Sentnece

<u>Yatâ</u>   <u>zorâ - ŋâ</u>   <u>ko</u>   <u>doŋbeŋ</u> <u>kârep</u> <u>patâ</u> <u>yatâ</u>
like that that-Subj. cont.   many   long   very like that

<u>zâi</u>   <u>kin</u> <u>ko</u>   <u>bon - ziŋ</u> <u>lela - me</u>.
ascend stand comp. fruit - their bear - they do

Expo. 1 Independent Clause

<u>Bon   - ŋâ</u> <u>imbaŋâ</u> <u>âsaqi   - bam</u>   <u>op - map</u>.
fruit - its   mighty   appear - ready sing. be- it does

Expo. 2: Independent Clause

<u>Zo</u> <u>ko</u> <u>zaat - ŋâ</u> <u>pâŋ - an</u> <u>bon   - ŋâ</u> <u>lela - map</u>.
that then arise - comp. mid - loc. fruit - its   bear - it does

'In soil like that however many coffee trees grow
up and stand very tall and then bear their fruit. They
are customarily ready to bear much fruit. Those having
grown up then bear fruit on the mid section of the tree.'

7.1.10

Reinforcement Paragraph

The Reinforcement Paragraph has two obligatory slots,
a Text and a Reinforcement. The filler of the second
slot reinforces or emphasises the validity of the text.
A common filler of the Reinforcement slot is the word
perâknak 'true' When the text is in the positive. When
the text is in the negative a common filler of the
Reinforcement slot is buŋâ. The Reinforcement Paragraph
is most commonly found in Hortatory and Procedural
Discourse and at Discourse closure.

Chart 28

Reinforcement Paragraph

+ Text	+ Reinforcement
Independent Clause	perâkŋak 'true' buŋâ 'no'
Sentnece	Independent Clause
	Sentence
	Identical Pred. Paragraph

Reinforcement Paragraph Examples

R-1

Text: Sentnece

Ekap	sâlâpku	- m	nâŋgâ - m	ko	irak	sot
paper	read it	- homo.	know - homo.	comp.	today	and

muka	marâ	kopi	me - m	aŋgâguaŋgâ	namâ	-ŋan
tomorrow	next day	coffee	get -homo.	exchange	building-his	loc.

âi - ne	kât	me - m	namba - ŋâ	ziŋgâ	-bap.
go - you	hetero.cash	get-homo.	number -its	give you	-he will

Reinforcement :   Independent Clause

Yat - ik	muyagi - bi.
like -that	find it - you will

'Having read the list carefully, today and tomorrow and the next day you will get coffee beans and take them to the trade store and the storekeeper will get and give you the amount of money. You will get the money like that.'

Reinforcement Paragraph Examples

R-2
Text: Independent Clause

<u>Zorat</u> <u>dâp</u> - <u>ŋâ</u> <u>kât</u> <u>a</u> <u>kânok</u> <u>a</u> <u>kânok</u> <u>âiâiŋâ</u>

that   fit - its cash man one man one going

<u>ɲarâk</u> <u>u</u> - <u>ap</u>.

time   be - it has

Reinforcement: Identical Predicate Paragraph

    Slot 1: Independent Clause

<u>Zorat</u> <u>s</u>   - <u>an</u>   <u>s</u> - <u>ap</u>.

That speak - I have speak - he has

    Slot 2: Independent Clause

<u>Nâ</u> <u>a</u> <u>ambân</u> <u>zeŋ</u> - <u>ɢât</u> <u>kâuk</u> - <u>ziŋandâ</u>   <u>s</u> - <u>an</u>.

I man woman them - poss.head -their Subj. speak- I have

    Slot 3: Independent Clause

<u>Moneŋ</u> <u>toren</u> - <u>ŋâ</u> <u>ni</u>   - <u>nek</u>   <u>s</u>   - <u>ap</u>.

money portion-its   give to me- you should speak- he has

    Slot 4: Independent Clause

<u>Lae</u> <u>motɲâi</u> <u>âi</u> - <u>bam</u>   <u>s</u> - <u>ap</u>.

Lae probably go - ready sing. speak - he has

    Slot 5: Sentence

<u>Bâu</u> <u>patâ</u> <u>dum</u> - <u>ŋâ</u> <u>motɲâi</u>   <u>ɢâ</u> - <u>bap</u>   <u>s</u>   - <u>ap</u>.

pig big   again - its probably come - it will speak- he has

'In accordance with that it is time to ask for two
dollars from each one. He says, "That is what I have
said," I speak this as the leader of the people.
Give me the remainder of the money he says. I am ready
to go, probably to Lae he says. A cow (or big pig)
will probably come again he said.'

7.1.11

Contrast Paragraph

The function of the Contrast Paragraph is to give contrast between the times, locations, subjects or objects of different sentences. The most common focus of the contrast is differing subjects, but other contrasts are quite common. The Contrast Paragraph consists of from two to four contrast slots, the fillers of each being in contrast with the one next to it.

The Contrast Paragraph occurs embedded in Narrative and Exposition Paragraphs. Contrast Paragraphs with two contrasts are common. Contrast Paragraphs with three or four contrasts however are infrequent. Paragraphs with three contrast slots may be made up:

1.   Contrast (a), Contrast (b), Contrast (c).

2.   Contrast (a), Contrast (b), Contrast (a) restated.

In Paragraphs where there are four contrast slots the order is:

Contrast (a), Contrast (b), Contrast (a) restated, Contrast (b) restated.

There are three ways of indicating contrast:

1.   Begin non-initial contrast slot fillers with the conjunction ka 'but'.

2.   Add the contrast morpheme ko after the subject or other item that is in contrast.

3. By the use of n̂âi 'a / another' or n̂âmbutn̂â 'some/others' in suitable clause level slots of the fillers of contrast slots to indicate the item in contrast.

It is common for a combination of any two of these indicators to be used. All three would not usually occur. The conjunction ka 'but' occurs only once per paragraph.

Chart 29

Contrast Paragraph

+ Contrast 1	+Contrast 2	± Contrast 3	± Contrast 4
Independent Clause	Independent Clause	Independent Clause	Independent Clause
Sentence	Sentence	Sentence	Sentence
Paragraph Types;	Paragraph Types;	Paragraph Types;	Paragraph Types;
Narrative Exposition	Narrative Exhortation Command- Fulfill.	Narrative	Exposition

Contrast Paragraph Examples

C-1

Contrast 1: Sentence

<u>Zo</u> <u>ko</u> <u>irak</u> <u>ko</u> <u>Gumum</u> <u>Sape</u> <u>Umun</u> <u>zo</u> <u>ziŋâ</u>
that then today cont. Gumum Sape Umun those they Subj.

<u>âi</u> <u>tuu</u> <u>-</u> <u>namen</u>.
go   make it - they are about to

Contrast 2: Sentence

<u>Koŋe</u> <u>Ununu</u> <u>Sikam</u> <u>zen</u> <u>ko</u> <u>sonda</u> <u>ŋâi</u> <u>-</u> <u>gât</u>.
Konge Ununu Sikam they cont. Sunday another- poss.

<u>bibirikalak</u> <u>-ŋan</u> <u>âi</u> <u>topkwap</u> <u>tuu</u> <u>-</u> <u>bi</u>.
Monday   - loc. go begin   make- they will

Contrast 3: Sentence

<u>Sonda</u> <u>karâmbu</u> <u>-</u> <u>ŋaŋ</u> <u>-</u> <u>gât</u> <u>ko</u> <u>Gerâun</u> <u>Lama</u>
Sunday   three   - its - poss.cont.Geraun Lama

<u>Wanam</u> <u>zo</u> <u>ziŋ</u> <u>tuu</u> <u>-</u> <u>bi</u>.
Wanam those they Subj. make it - they will

'About the road work, Today Gumum, Sape and Umun
villages will go and work on it. On the next Monday
Konge, Ununu and Sikam Vi.lages will go and begin work
on it. For the third week it will be Gerâun, Lama and
Wanam villages turn to work on it.'

Contrast Paragraph

C-2

Contrast 1: Sentence

Ɖâi Kâtuara bâk____ -ŋan ogep kâtik kwâlâ - m

one Kâtuara mountain - loc. roofing strong buy it- homo.

tuu___ - wen.

make it- we did.

Contrast 2: Independent Clause

Ɖâi Gârâŋgârâŋ Mamsiŋ Sosaieti tuu___ - wen.

another Garanggarang Mamsing Society make it - we did

Contrast 3: Sentence

Ɖâi ko mârum um_____ -ŋan me - m

another cont. already inside - its loc. get it-homo.

ne - m ândi - en.

eat it- homo. live - we have

Contrast 4: Exposition Paragraph

　　Text: Independent Clause

Ka Gârâŋgârâŋ ko yen__ kinz - ap.

but Garanggarang cont. nothing stand- it has

　　Expo.: Sentence

Zorat kep kamân op ko mâtâp me - m pâ__ - nat.

that dance drum be homo. then door take-homo.put it-we will

'One store we built on Katuara hill with iron
roofing that we bought. Another store is the Mamsing
Society store at Garanggarang. One we have already
opened and are buying and eating foods from it. But
the other just stands there unopened. We will have
a dance and open it.'

7.1.12

Exhortation Paragraph

The features of the Exhortation Paragraph are an obligatory Basis and an obligatory Exhortation. The function of the paragraph is to urge the hearer to some action by giving exhortation and the relevant basis for it. The Exhortation Paragraph   is most commonly found in Hortatory and Epistolary Discourse. It is a common form for expressing requests.

The fillers of the Exhortation slot must be in the Imperative or the Remote Future Tense.

Chart 30

Exhortation Paragraph

+ Basis   + Exhortation

Independent   Independent
Clause   Clause

Sentence   Sentence

Paragraph
Types

Narrative
Paraphrase

Exhortation Paragraph Examples

Ex-1

Baśis: Sentence

<u>Miroto</u> <u>sot</u> <u>net</u> <u>tomate</u> <u>sot</u> <u>kudere</u> <u>zi</u>   <u>mem</u>

Miroto sith we du. tomato and oranges these get- homo.

<u>Derim</u> <u>gei</u>   <u>gola</u>   <u>ta</u>   <u>-</u> <u>ap</u>   <u>zâk</u> <u>-</u> <u>âr</u> <u>-</u> <u>en</u>

Derim descend European   stay - he has him - poss.-loc.

<u>pâ</u>   <u>-</u> <u>itâ</u>   <u>ga</u>   <u>-</u> <u>ap</u>.

put it-we du.   come - it has

Exhortation: Condition- Result Paragraph

   Condition: Independent Clause

<u>Zo</u>   <u>muyagi</u>   <u>-</u> <u>at?</u>

that find it   - you have

   Result: Sentnece

<u>Oi</u>   <u>ko</u>   <u>ekap</u>   <u>pâ</u>   <u>-</u> <u>na</u>   <u>gâ</u> <u>-</u> <u>i</u> <u>ik</u>   <u>-</u> <u>pâ.</u>

and then letter put it - you hetero.come - it hetero see it-I
                                          must

Periphery: Narrative Paragraph

   BU 1: Independent Clause

<u>Yuli</u> <u>27</u> <u>Ununu</u> <u>gâbâ</u> <u>Derim</u> <u>gei</u>   <u>-</u> <u>wet</u>.

July   27 Ununu from Derim descend - we du. did

   BU 2: Sentnece

<u>Gei</u>   <u>ekap</u>   <u>zo</u> <u>pindâ</u>   <u>-</u> <u>m</u>   <u>ko</u>   <u>âbure</u> <u>-</u> <u>m</u>

descend letter   that give him - homo. comp. return- homo.

<u>Ununu</u>   <u>ga</u>   <u>-</u> <u>wet</u>.

Ununu   come - we du. did

'Miroto and I we two took those tomatoes and oranges and went down to Derim and gave them to the European who lives there and so they came to you. Did you get those things? If so then send me a letter and let me see it. It was on the 27th of July that we went down from Ununu to Derim. We went down and gave him that letter and then returned to Ununu.'

Exhortation Paragraph Examples

Ex -2

Basis: Identical Predicate Paragraph

    Slot 1:   Independent Clause

<u>Den</u>   <u>kânok</u>   <u>zi</u>   <u>mân</u>   <u>dâ+ɡɒ - man</u>.

message   one   this neg.   tell-you- I do

    Slot 2:   Independent Clause

<u>Irak</u>   <u>dâ-ɡ°ɡ   -   an</u>.

today   tell-you - I have

Exhortation: Sentence

<u>Zo</u>   <u>nâŋgâ - na</u>   <u>suɡ   - ik</u>

that think - you hetero. pierce- it should

    'There is one thing that I have not been telling
you.   Today I am telling it to you.   Listen, for it
must sink into your mind.'

7.1.13

Alternative Paragraph

The Alternative Paragraph is marked by an obligatory Alternative 1 and an obligatory Alternative Link filled by mo 'or' and an optional Alternative 2 filled by buŋâ 'not' , dap 'what/how' or an independent clause or a sentence. When the Alternative 2 is omitted the Alternative 1 must be filled by a question. Such an alternative paragraph has the function of asking for confirmation or denial of the facts presented in the filler of the Alternative 1. When both Alternatives are filled they are both filled by either question or statement with the function of asking which of the two alternatives is correct, or a presentation of two .. alternate possibilities.

The Paragraph is commonly found embedded in Exhortation, Quote and Condition-Result Paragraphs as well as in Narrarive Discourse.

The Alternative 1 may begin with the conjunctions ŋât ko 'so then', or zo ko 'that then'.

Chart 31

Alternative Paragraph

+ Alternative 1   + Alt. Link   ± Alternative 2

Independent   m̲o̲ 'or'   buŋâ 'not'
Clause   dap   'what'

Sentence   Independent
                                 Clause

                                 Sentence

Alternative Paragraph Examples

Alt.- 1

Alternative 1: Independent Clause

<u>Zâk</u>   <u>mo - ip</u>?

He   die - he did

Alt. Link:

<u>mo</u>

or

Alternative 2: Independent Clause

<u>ta   - ap</u>?

stay - he has

    'Did he die or does he remain alive?'

Alternative Paragraph Examples

Alt. -2

Alternative 1:   Sentence

<u>Toren - n̂â</u>   <u>zi</u>   <u>aksik</u>   <u>me - m</u>   <u>nangâ - ne</u>   <u>ko</u>
half   - its this   all   get - homo.   complete-they   hetero. comp.

<u>kât</u>   <u>pâ - itâ</u>   <u>gâ - bap?</u>
cash   put- it we du. hetero.   come - it will

Alt. Link:
<u>mo</u>

or

Alternative 2:   Sentence

<u>Pâ   - itâ   tâi</u>   <u>gâ - na</u>   <u>gi - rat?</u>
                hetero.
put it- we du. stay- it hetero. come-you hetero. give you-we du.
                                                              will

   'When they have bought the remainde here, shall

we send the cash to you or will we put it aside until

you come and then give it to you?'

7.1.14

Antithetical Paragraph

The function of the Antithetical Paragraph is the
contrast of a Thesis with an Antithesis, presenting the
Thesis as false and the Antithesis as correct. The
Paragraph is made up of an Obligatory Thesis, an optional
Rejection and an obligatory Antithesis.

The Paragraph is commonly found embedded in
Exposition Paragraphs and in Hortative and Narrative
Discourse.

Chart 32

Antithetical Paragraph

+ Thesis	± Rejection	+ Antithesis
Independent Clause	buŋâ 'no'	Independent Clause
Sentence	buŋ kâtikŋâ 'definitely not'	Sentence
Paragraph types:		
Quote Paragraph		

Antithetical Paragraph Examples

Ant.-1

Thesis: Quote Paragraph

    Introduction: Sentence

Daran nep zi   bon   - ŋâ   o - i   ko

later work this fruit - its   be - it hetero. comp.

sâ   - bi.

speak - they will

    Quote: Sentence

"Nâ - ŋâ   sa - ndâ   muyagi   - ap."

I   - Subj.   speak- I hetero.   appear   - it has

    Closure: Independent Clause

Yatâ   sâ   - be.

like that speak - they might

Antithesis: Independent Clause

Nep   zirâ   mari   - ŋâ   ŋâ.

work   this   owner   - its   I

    'Later when this work of building an airstrip
bears fruit then they will say, "I caused this air-
strip to appear."
They might speak like that. But I am the originator
of this airstrip.'

Antithetical Paragraph Examples

Ant.-2

Thesis: Sentence

Nâŋgâ — m   ko   a   kânok - ŋâ   tuu   - bâmaŋ

hear it -homo. comp. man   one   - Subj. make it-he is about to

sâ   — m   t   — e.

speak — homo.   stay — you have

Rejection

Buŋâ.

no

Antithesis: Independent Clause

Koŋe   sosaieti   pâ   — namen.

Koŋge   society   put it- we are about to

    'Hearing that you are saying, "This store is
being built by one man." That is not so. This is a
Koŋge Society store that we are building.'

7.1.15.

Coordinate Paragraph

The function of this paragraph type is to express dual condition, Exhortation, Evasion, Result etc. It is most commonly found embedded in Condition- Result Paragraphs.

The Coordinate Paragraph is made up of two obligatory Coordinate slots linked by the obligatory coordinate link sot 'and'. The filler of the Coordinate 1 slot may begin with a conjunction such as zo ko 'that then'.

Chart 33

Coordinate Paragraph

+ Coordinate 1	+ Link	+ Coordinate 2
Independent Clause	sot 'and'	Independent Clause
Sentence		Sentence

Coordinate Paragraph Examples

Coord.-1

Coordinate 1: Independent Clause

<u>Zo</u> <u>ko</u> <u>bit</u> - <u>niŋâ</u> <u>pikpiksâ - map</u>.

that then hand - our   ache   - it does

Link

<u>sot</u>

and

Coordinate 2: Independent Clause

<u>Kât</u> <u>doŋbep</u> <u>mân</u> <u>mi</u> - <u>men</u>.

cash much   neg. get it - we do

    'If we pick coffee that is not fully ripe, then

our hands pain and we do not get much money for it.'

Coordinate Paragraph Examples

Coord.-2

Coordinate 1:   Independent Clause

Kamân - niŋâ lâmbat - pap.

village- our   grow   - it will

Link

sot

and

Coordinate 2:   Sentence

Kutsiŋi - niŋâ laŋkarâ - m   âi - bap.

fame   - our   spread - homo. go - it will

'Our village will grow and our fame will increase
and spread about.'

7.1.16

Command-Fulfillment Paragraph

The features of the Command- Fulfillment Paragraph
are an obligatory Command slot and an obligatory Fulfillment
slot. The paragraph occurs most commonly in Narrative
Discourse, its function being the narration of a command
given and then its fulfillment. The Paragraph may
occur embedded in other paragraph types such as Contrast
Paragraph. Imperative or a future tense must be used
in the filler of the Command slot.

Chart 34

Command- Fulfillment Paragraph

+ Command   + Fulfillment

Independent   Independent
Clause   Clause

Sentence   Sentence

Paragraph Types;
Narrative
Exposition

Command-Fulfillment Paragraph Examples

C-F-1

Command: Quote Paragraph

    Introduction: Sentence

<u>Kanu</u> <u>zo</u> <u>puriksâ - i</u>   <u>ko</u>   <u>katep</u> <u>zorâ - ŋâ</u>

canoe that turn - it hetero. comp. child that - Subj.

<u>itâ</u>   <u>sâ - ip.</u>

like this   speak- he did

    Quote: Exposition Paragraph

      Text: Final Clause

"<u>Kanu</u> <u>mân</u> <u>birâ   - bi.</u>

canoe   neg. leave it - you pl. will

      Exposition: Independent Clause

<u>Kanu - yân - âk</u>   <u>qâsu   - m</u>   <u>ta - pi.</u>"

canoe - loc. - lim. hold it - homo. stay - you pl. will

Fulfillment: Sentence

<u>Sâ - i</u>   <u>ko</u>   <u>ambân</u> <u>ŋâi</u> <u>ko</u>   <u>kânu - yân - âk</u>

speak- he hetero.comp. woman a cont. canoe - loc. lim.

<u>qâsu   - m</u>   <u>tâ   - ip.</u>

hold it - homo. stay   - she did

   'That canoe capsized then that young fellow spoke like this, "Do not leave the canoe. Just keep holding right on to it." He spoke like that and one of the women, she in contrast to the others stay holding on to it.'

Command- Fulfillment Paragraph Examples

C-F-2

Command: Quote Paragraph

  Introduction: Sentnece

<u>Upat</u> <u>kwânâŋgâ   – m</u>   <u>ko</u>   <u>sâ   – ip.</u>

Upat plent it   – homo. comp. speak – he did

   Quote: Procedural Paragraph

     Step 1: Exposition Par.

       Text: Independent Clause

"<u>Sâu</u>   <u>zi</u>   <u>gi   – bâman.</u>

knife   this   give you– I am about to

         Exposition: Sentnece

<u>Sâu</u>   <u>zirâ – ŋâ</u> <u>me – m</u>   <u>nep</u>   <u>hibuk – ŋâ</u> <u>um</u>

knife   this-Subj. get – homo.work   grass – its bamboo

<u>uri   – na</u>   <u>kabâ</u>   <u>o – i</u>   <u>batúm</u>

cut it – you hetero. clearing be – it hetero. sweet potato

<u>nep</u>   <u>tuu   – bi.</u>

garden   make it– you pl. will

     Step 2: Exposition Paragraph

       Text: Alternative Paragraph

         Alternative 1: Sentnece

<u>Kabâ</u>   <u>o – i</u>   <u>gâ</u> <u>sombâ</u> <u>u – pan?</u>

clearing be – it hetero.you aged   be   – you will

         Alternative Link

<u>mo</u>

 or

Alternative 2:   Independent Clause

<u>Sâu</u>	<u>zi</u>	<u>sombâ</u>	<u>u</u>	-	<u>pap</u>?
knife	this	aged	be	-	it will

Exposition: Independent Clause

<u>Zor</u>	-	<u>en</u>	<u>nii</u>	<u>kabâ</u>	-	<u>ŋâ</u>	<u>muyagi</u>	-	<u>bap</u>
that	-	loc.	aeroplane	clearing-its			appear	-	it will

Fulfillment: Sentnece

<u>sâ</u>	-	<u>m</u>	<u>ga</u>	<u>abu</u>	<u>kwânâŋâ</u>	-	<u>m</u>	<u>ar-i</u>	<u>nâ</u>
say	-	homo	come	abu	plant it	-	homo.	go- he	hetero. I

<u>nep</u>	<u>zo</u>	<u>galem</u>	<u>sâu</u>	<u>me</u>	-	<u>m</u>	<u>ga</u>	<u>pa</u>	-	<u>ndâ</u>
work	that	overseer	knife	get-		homo.	come	put it-		I hetero

<u>sâu</u>	<u>zorâ</u>	-	<u>ŋâ</u>	<u>sapsug</u>	-	<u>i</u>	<u>nep</u>	<u>zi</u>
knife	that	-	Subj.	declare	-	it	work	this

<u>bagi</u>	-	<u>netâ</u>	<u>nii</u>	<u>kabâ</u>	-	<u>ŋâ</u>	<u>âsagi</u>	-	<u>ap</u>.
enter-		they	hetero.	plane	clearing-		its	appear	-	it has

'He planted a victory leaf plant then he said, "I
am about to give you this knife. Take this knife and cut
this grass and pit pit and when it is a clear place they
will make sweet potato gardens there. It will become a
cleared place when you will be old or when this knife
will be old. An airstrip will be built there." He
spoke and came and placted a victory leaf plant and
went and I watched over the work area and brought
the knife and put it aside, and that declared it to the
people causing them to enter into that work so that an
airstrip has come to be built here.'

7.1.17

Question-Answer Paragraph

The Question-Answer Paragraph features two obligatory slots, the first a Question and the second an Answer. The paragraph is an explanatory device in which the speaker poses a question and then himself gives an answer. The Question-Answer Paragraph occurs embedded in other paragraphs such as the Condition-Result Paragraph and most commonly in Hortatory Discourse.

Chart 35

Question-Answer Paragraph

+ Question	+ Answer
wan 'what'	Independent
wangât 'why'	Clause
Independent Clause	Sentence
Sentence	
(Question)	(often conclusing with zorat 'that (is why)'

Question-Answer Paragraph Examples

Q-A-1

Question: Independent Clause

Irâ   dabuta   yatâ   zo?
bag   how many   like that those

Answer: Sentence

Irâ   patâ   patâ   yatâ   zo   ar-i   ko   tem
bag   large large like that those go-it hetero comp. rack

lu   ‑ m   âi   ‑ m   efemdies ‑ ân   pâ   ‑ ndat.
lift ‑homo. go ‑ homo.   FMDS   ‑loc.   put it ‑ we du. will

'How many bags of coffee like those? Great big
bags of it will increase then we will put them on a
frame and carry them over to the FMDS store and place
them there.'

Question-Answer Paragraph Examples

Q-A-2

Question: Independent Clause

<u>Wan - gât ekap</u>   <u>zi   qa - ap</u>?

What - poss. letter   this come - it has

Answer: Independent Clause

<u>Tosa - niŋ</u>   <u>ta - ap</u>.

debt - our   stay- it has

    'Why has this letter come? It has come because
we still have a debt to pay.'

8.0   THE DISCOURSE

Discourse is the highest level in Komba. Discourse level tagmemes are manifested by items from lower levels, most commonly Paragraphs.

No clear grammatical contrasts are evident to distinguish varied discourse types although there are certain tendencies as charted in chart 37.

The structure of all Komba Discourse fits the formula:

Discourse = $\pm$ Aperture $\pm$ Stage + Episode/Point^n $\pm$ Closure $\pm$ Finis

Aperture

The Aperture is optional. It may be a clause, sentence or Paragraph. It is commonly formulaic. It may be simply an address of the hearer or reader, or an address plus an explanatory Paragraph.

âu buku - nâ, 'Oh my cousin'
Oh cousin-my

O buku - nâ ekap pâ - in zo muyage - wan
Oh cousin-my paper put it-you did that find it- I did

Oi um âlep patâ nâng - an
and inside good big feel it- I have

'Oh my friend, I received that letter that you sent and I was very happy.'

The Aperture may be a story title or introduction.

Kamân - gât den singi dâ - go - bâ
village-poss. talk of tell - you - I shall
'Let me tell you the news of the village.'

Mârum wâring patâ meip zor - at den singi
previously earthquake big get-it did that- ref. talk of

sâ - bâman.
speak - I am about to

Stage

The stage is also optional. Both Aperture and stage
may occur. The stage is often embedded in the first
clause of the first episode or point of the Discourse.
It may occur separately as a Clause, Sentence or Paragraph.
It may identify the participants, the time, location.

1954   narâk - nâ   zor   - en   a   ambân   donbep   patâ
1954   time   - its that - loc man women   many   big

zin   Hube mâi   - râp zinâ   Mape   Maneba
they Subj.Hube owner   - pl. they Subj. Mape   Maneba

âi - m   - nâ   stua nam   - in âi kopi
go - homo. - comp. store house - loc. go   coffee

mot - zin   mi   - nat   sâ   - m   âi - we.
etc. - their get it- we will speak - homo. go - they did

'In 1954 many people from Hube went to Mape and
then Maneba. They went to trade coffee and things
at the store.'

Episode / Point

These units which form the nucleus of the discourse
are labelled either Episode or Point depending on whether
the discourse is basically presenting a chronological
sequence or logical reasoning.

As few as one Episode/Point may make up a discourse.
There is no limit to the number of Episode/ points
in a Discourse.

Each Episode/point is filled by a paragraph or
lower level unit such as Sentence or Independent
Clause.

Closure.

The closure is optional. It is commonly the brief formulaic indicator <u>yatik</u> 'that is it', but it may be expanded to an exposition paragraph or be a type of summary which does not include <u>yatik</u>. It may even give the time and location if these were not included in the stage.

<u>zo</u>   <u>yat   — ik</u>

that like that- spec.

'That is it.'

<u>Nâ den</u> <u>kârep</u> <u>buŋâ.</u>   <u>Zo</u>   <u>yat   — ik</u>.

I talk long   not   that like that - spec.

'I do not have a lot to say. That is all.'

<u>Kopi</u> <u>âlipŋâ</u> <u>âsage — map</u>   <u>zor — at</u>   <u>top   — ŋâ</u>

coffee good   appear - it does that - ref.   basis — its

<u>zo</u>   <u>yatâ</u>.

that like that

'That is how good coffee is produced.'

<u>Yuli</u> <u>nâmbur — an</u> <u>kânok</u> <u>u — pab   — ân</u>   <u>zor — en</u>

July other side-loc. one be - it will - loc. that -loc.

<u>Yuli -gât</u> <u>narâk — ŋâ</u> <u>zor — en</u> <u>zo</u>   <u>yatâ</u>.

July -poss. time - its that - loc.that like that

'When it is the sixth of July, at that time of July like that.'

Finis

Finis occurs occassionally when the narrator
states his name. It is not common apart from
epistlary type discourses. It is formulaic.

<u>Nâ</u>   <u>zeŋ - ŋât</u>   <u>buku Henaŋ.</u>

I   you - poss. cousin Henang.

'I am your friend Henang.'

8.1

Chart 36

Discourse Slots and Fillers

Discourse =

± Aperture	± Stage	+ Episode/Point^n	± Closure	± Finis
Address	Independent Clause	Independent Clause	<u>yatik</u> 'that is it'	Independent Clause
Independent Clause	Sentence	Sentence	Independent Clause	Sentence
Paragraph	Paragraph	Paragraph	Sentence	
			Paragraph	

8.2

Discourse Linkage

Connections are not nearly as relevant or common on the discourse level as on the paragraph level. The one common connector on the discourse level is <u>oi</u> 'and' or the expanded form <u>oi</u> <u>ko</u> 'and then'.

A change in participants, time, location or action generally marks a new episode/point.

The majority of episode/points begin without a connective, the linkage being by juxtaposition only.

------ <u>para</u>   <u>saaŋ - indâ</u>   <u>âi</u> <u>ze</u>   <u>- m</u>   <u>ko</u>

    horizontal   tie it-we hetero go recline- homo.comp.

<u>bon</u> <u>- ŋâ</u> <u>âlip</u> <u>yatâ</u>   <u>âsage</u> <u>- map</u>.

fruit - its good like that appear - it does.

<u>Kopi</u> <u>sându</u>   <u>- m</u>   <u>⌐ ŋâ</u> <u>irâ</u> <u>karâmbut</u>   <u>kimembut</u>

coffee pick it - homo.-comp. bag three   four

<u>yatâ</u>   <u>mândâlimândâli</u> <u>- ŋan</u> <u>pâ</u> <u>- indâ</u> -----

like that crusher   - its loc. put - we hetero.

---'we tie the branches out horizontal and good fruit grows on the tree. ⌐ Episode Break ⌐ Having picked the coffee we put three or four bags at the the crusher'---

Some new episode/points have a verb indicating linkage
with the previous episode/point.

--- <u>sâp</u> <u>kimembur- âk</u>　<u>tap　-　ŋâ</u>　<u>alâge - i</u>　<u>ko</u>

　　 time 　 four - lim. 　 stay - comp. 　 rot - it 　 comp.

<u>saŋgon　　- mem</u>.

wash it 　- we do

<u>Too</u>　<u>saŋgon</u>　<u>lokiloki　- ŋâ</u>　<u>ko</u>　<u>kiin</u>　<u>kânok</u>　<u>saŋgon - men</u>.

water wash 　　 pour out 　 - its cont. foot one 　 wash it 　-we do.

　---'having stayed only four days it rots, then we wash it.

-Episode Break-. Now the washing and water changing

(rinsing) we do that eleven times.'

　　When the previous episode /point ended with direct
quotation the new episode will begin with a form of the
verb <u>sâ</u> 　'to speak.'

<u>ŋâ</u> <u>itâ</u>　　<u>sâ　- wan</u>,　<u>O</u>, <u>a</u>　<u>ŋâi</u> <u>saru - yân</u> <u>ambi</u>

I　like this speak-I did "Oh, man a sea 　- loc. down there

<u>ze　- m</u>　<u>ta　-　ap</u>."

recline-homo. stay- he has

<u>sâ　- ndâ</u>　　<u>a</u>　<u>ŋâi</u> <u>Kwembuŋ</u> <u>gok　　　-ŋâ</u> <u>yat　-　ik</u>

speak -I hetero.man a 　Kwembung inhabitant - its like that-spec.

<u>bet　-ŋâ</u>　<u>me　- m</u> ----

hand -my 　get it - homo.

---'I said, "Oh, there is a man down there in the sea."

-Episode Break.- I spoke and 　 a man from Kwembung

supported me'---

8.3

Discourse Types

The discourse types in this analysis are Narrative, Procedural, Hortatory, Expository, and Epistolary. Their characteristic features are as follows.

8.3.1 Narrative Discourse

Narrative Discourse recounts a story. Generally a chronological sequence is presented using past tenses in the first and third person. The episodes tend to be longer than in some other discourses. Episode linkage is by juxtaposition and verb repetition.

8.3.2 Procedural Discourse

Procedural Discourse explains how something is usually done. Here again a chronological sequence is presented using immediate past tense with the customary action suffixes to indicate customary procedure. First or third person plural is used throughout in a general non-specific identification of the actors. The episodes are longer that those in some types of discourse.

8.3.3 Hortatory Discourse

The purpose of Hortatory discourse is to influence behaviour. Discourses which are primarily Hortative in content are not common. More common is discourse combining Exposition and Exhortation, (as in Discourse D.) or Exhortation paragraphs embedded in a Narrative Discourse.

Imperative and Future tense and use of second person mark Hortatory Discourse. The points are shorter than in Narrative and Procedural Discourse. Logical reasoning is presented rather than chronological sequence. Points are linked by juxtaposition, or the connecotr oi 'and'. The use of address or the ejaculations bâi 'enough of that' or bati 'enough' may introduce a primary exhortation.

8.3.4   Expository Discourse

Expository discourse presents a topic and explains one or more aspects of it. As noted Exposition is often combined in a discourse∧Exhortation. The exposition giving the basis for the exhortation. Expository discourse uses past tenses and third person most commonly. It has shorter points than some other discourse types. Linkage is by juxtaposition and use of the connector oi 'and'. Exposition presents logical reasoning rather than chronological sequence.

8.3.5   Epistolary Discourse

The writing of letters has come in since the introduction of literacy. Epistolary Discourses is marked by formal apeture, closure and finis. Any tense or person or combination of tenses and persons may be used. Epistles commonly are a combination of Narration and Exhortation. The points may be largely unrelated to each other, covering varied topics. Linkage is by use of the connector oi 'and' and by juxtaposition.

8.4   Discourse Examples

Five discourse examples are here presented to give a sampling of the Komba discourse   . Each discourse is from a different author, the authors coming from several villages and being of an age range of from twenty to seventy years of age.

Chart 38

Discourse Examples

Discourse	Type	Title
A	Narrative	'Man at sea'
B	Narrative	'The airstrip'
C	Procedural	'Coffee Processing'
D	Expositional/Hortatory	'School Children'
E	Epistdary	'Village News'

A constituent diagram is presented preceding each Discourse, and then the discourse with morpheme be morpheme translation and a free translation after each Discourse level filler.

8.4.1   Discourse A,   Narrative — 'Man at Sea.'

This discourse is a straight forward narrative made up of a stage filled by a Narrative paragraph, five episodes each filled by a narrative paragraph, and a closure which is formulaic.

Discourse A, Narrative 'Man at Sea.'

Stage : Narrative Paragraph

    BU1: Independent Clause

    BU2: Exposition Paragraph

       Text: Sentence

       Exposition 1: Independent Clause

       Exposition 2: Independent Clause

Episode 1: Narrative Paragraph

    BU1: Sentence

    BU2: Sentence

    BU3: Sentence

Episode 2: Narrative Paragraph

    BU1: Independent Clause

    BU2: Sentence

    BU3: Quote Paragraph
       Introduction: Sentence
       Quote : Independent clause

Episode 3: Narrative Paragraph

    BU1: Sentence

    BU2: Sentence

Episode 4: Narrative Paragraph

    BU1: Sentence

    BU2: Quote Paragraph

       Introduction: Sentence

       Quote: Sentence

    BU3: Quote Paragraph

       Introduction: Sentence

       Quote: Independent Clause

Episode 5:   Narrative Paragraph

   BU1:   Sentence

   BU2:   Sentence

   BU3:   Sentence

Closure: <u>Yatik</u>   'that is it.'

Discourse A, Narrative 'Man at Sea.'

Stage: Narrative Paragraph

BU1: Independent Clause

<u>1956</u> <u>zor</u> <u>- en</u> <u>ekap</u> <u>namâ</u> <u>- ŋan</u> <u>ândi - wan</u>.

1956 that — loc paper house - its loc. live - I did

'In 1956 I was in school.'

BU2: Exposition Paragraph

Text: Sentence

<u>Narâk</u> <u>zor</u> <u>- en</u> <u>Wasu</u> <u>ŋâbâ</u> <u>waŋŋâ</u> <u>me</u> <u>- m</u> <u>bɑ</u> <u>zâi</u> <u>-wen</u>.

time that -loc. Wasu from boat get-homo. mot. ascend-we did

Exposition1: Independent Clause

<u>Op</u> <u>ko</u> <u>narâk</u> <u>zor</u> <u>- en</u> <u>saru</u> <u>doŋbep</u> <u>patâ</u> <u>bali - m</u>

be then time that -loc. sea many big bad -homo.

<u>kir</u> <u>- ip</u>.

stand-it did

Exposition 2: Independent Clause

<u>Oi</u> <u>map</u> <u>narâk</u> <u>- ŋâ</u> <u>too</u> <u>mâik</u> <u>mâik</u> <u>zor</u> <u>- aŋâ</u>

and rain time - its stream small small that - Subj.

<u>uurup</u> <u>doŋbep</u> <u>patâ</u> <u>kir</u> <u>- ip</u>.

flood much big stand - it

'At that time we caught a boat from Wasu and went.
And at that time the sea was very rough, and being the
rainy season every small stream was much in flood.'

Episode 1:   Narrative Paragraph

   BU1:   Sentence

<u>Zâi</u>   - <u>wen</u>   <u>manâ.</u>

Ascend - we did   ctd.

   BU2:   Sentence

<u>Sialum</u> <u>sot</u> <u>Somge</u> <u>oset - zikŋ</u> <u>- an</u>   <u>too</u>   <u>ŋâi</u> <u>ga</u>   - <u>ap</u>,

Sialum and Somge midst-their du.- loc.strean a   come- it has

<u>zorâ</u> -<u>ŋâ</u> <u>katep</u> <u>ŋâi</u> <u>dii</u>   - <u>m</u>   <u>ar - i</u>   <u>ko</u>

that - Subj. youth a lead - homp. go - it hetero. comp.

<u>katep</u> <u>zo</u> <u>âi</u> - <u>m</u>   <u>ma</u>   <u>ko</u>   <u>saru</u> <u>tânâm</u> - <u>ŋan</u>

youth that go -homo. ctd.comp. sea   middle-its loc.

<u>âi</u> - <u>m</u>   <u>eg</u>   - <u>i</u>   <u>nak</u> <u>ŋâi</u> <u>gâ</u>   - <u>ip</u>.

go -homo. see it-he hetero. tree   a   come - it did

   BU3:   Sentence

<u>Ai - m</u>   <u>ko</u>   <u>nak</u> <u>zo</u> <u>lu</u> - <u>m</u>   <u>ze</u>   - <u>m</u> <u>tâ</u> <u>ip</u>.

go -homo. comp. tree that carry-homo. recline-homo. stay-he did

   'We went and continued on. Between Somge and Sialum
a stream comes out to sea. That stream carried a youth
out and he continued going out into the sea. He looked
and saw a tree floating. He went to it and held on and
lay there.'

Episode 2:   Narrative Paragraph

   BU1:   Independent Clause

<u>Nen</u> <u>zi</u> - <u>bâ</u>   <u>Misin</u>   <u>zeŋ</u>   - <u>gât</u>   <u>sip</u>   <u>ŋâi</u>   <u>mârum</u>

we   this- from Mission they   -poss. ship   a previosly

<u>ânde</u> - <u>ip</u>   <u>kut</u> - <u>ŋâ</u>   <u>Warambu</u>   <u>zor</u> - <u>en</u>   <u>zâi</u>   - <u>wen.</u>

live - it did   name-its Warambu   that-loc. ascend - we did.

   BU2:   Sentence

<u>Zâi</u>   - <u>m</u>   - <u>ŋâ</u>   · <u>nâ</u>   <u>ega</u> -   <u>wan.</u>

ascend - homo.-comp.   I   see it- I did

   BU3:   Quote Paragraph

     Introduction: Sentence

<u>A</u>   <u>zo</u>   <u>nak</u>   <u>kwâk</u> - <u>ŋan</u>   <u>lu</u>   - <u>m</u>   - <u>ŋâ</u>

man that tree   top -his loc.   carry - homo.   - comp.

<u>si</u> - <u>ŋik</u>   <u>niŋ</u> -   <u>it</u>   <u>ze</u>   - <u>i</u>   <u>nâ</u>   <u>itâ</u>

eyes -his spec. us - see recline- he hetero.   I   like this

<u>sâ</u>   - <u>wan.</u>

speak - I did

     Quote: Independent Clause

<u>O</u> , <u>a</u>   <u>ŋâi</u> <u>saru</u> -<u>ŋân</u> <u>âmbi</u>   <u>ze</u>   - <u>m</u>   <u>ta</u>   - <u>ap</u>

Oh, man   a   sea - loc. down there recline-homo. stay-he does

   'From here we went on a ship the mission had, called
the Warambu. We went and I saw it. I saw that youth
holding a tree above him with just his eyes looking at
us and I spoke like this, "Oh, there is a man down
there in the sea."'

Episode 3: Narrative Paragraph

BU1: Sentence

Sa - ndâ   a   ŋâi Kwembuŋ   gok   -ŋâ yatik
speak-I hetero.man a Kwembung inhabitant-its like that

bet - nâ me - m   sâ - i   wâke galem   -ŋâ
hand -my get -homo. speak-he hetero. ship overseer-its

bos⌢kuru zen zâk yatiŋ   - âk   nek   - ŋâ net -nâ
   crew   they he like that-lim. see me -comp. hand -my

me - m   ko sâ   - neʈâ   wâke zo mârum
get - homo. comp. speak - they hetero. ship that already

pa   - m   - ŋâ kârep patâ ar - ip.
leave it-homo. - comp. far   big   go - it did

BU 2: Sentence

A zo pa - m   ba âɪ - wen.
man that leave him-homo. mot. go - we did

'I spoke and a man from Kwembung supported me speaking likewise, and the ships mate and crew looked at me and spoke in support of me. By this time the ship had already left that spot and travelled a long distance. We left that man and went on.'

Episode 4: Narrative Paragraph

BU 1: Sentence

Oi ko   kapitan duku   - netâ   kapiten   -ŋâ

And then Captain tell him- they hetero. Captain - Subj.

wâke me - m   purik pâ   - i   ko   âbure   - m

ship get - homo. turn put it - hetero. comp. return-homo.

ŋâ   - i   iŋâ   - wen.

come it -hetero.   see him - we did.

BU 2: Quote Paragraph

Introduction: Sentence

Ek   - ŋâ   mâsikâ   - wen.

see him- comp. enquire - we did

Quote: Sentence

"Gâ mo - m   - ŋâ   mo   âlipŋâ   ŋika ga -at? "

You die - homo. - comp. or   alright   you   come-you have

BU 3: Quote Paragraph

Introduction: Sentence

sâ - indâ   sâ - ip.

speak- we hetero. speak - he did

Quote: Independent Clause

"Nâ alipŋâ   wâgân   zi   - an "

I   alright alive/resting recline- I have

'And then they told the Captain and the Captain turned
the ship about and it returned and came and we saw him.
Having caught sight of him we enquired, "Are you already
dead or have you come being alright?" We said that and
he answered, "I am alright. I am alive."'

Episode 5: Narrative Paragraph

    BU 1: Sentence

sâ - i   repa pâ   - indâ   giar   - i

speak-he hetero. rope put it-we hetero. descend - it hetero.

ko gâau   - m   kopgâ - i   me - m   zâi

comp. hold it -homo. ascend-he hetero. get-homo. ascend

Sialum   parâ   -wen.

Sialum   put it - we did

    BU 2: Sentnece

Pâ   - m   -ŋâ   a zo pet   bos͡ kuru   zi -ŋ

put it-homo. -comp. man that loincloth   crew   they-Subj.

pindâ   - ne   lâ   - ip.

give him - they hetero. put on - he did.

    BU 3: Sentence

Lâ   - i   ko   pind   - indâ

put on -he hetero. comp. give him-we hetero.

ge   - m   - ŋâ   Sialum   pâ   - indâ

descend-homo. - comp.Sialum   leave him- we hetero.

kamân - ŋan   giar   - ip.

village- his loc. descend - he did

    'He said that and we threw a rope to him, then he got
it and came aboard and we took him and landed at Sialum.
Having landed the crew gave him a loincloth and he put it
on. He put it on then we gave things to him and he got off.
We left him at Sialum and he went home to his village

Closure: Formula

Yat   - ik

like that-spec.

'That is it.'

8.4.2   Discourse B,   Narrative 'The Airstrip.'

This discourse is narrive but also has a hortative function. It is told to put on record who takes credit for the airstrip being built, but also it exhorts the hearer to act. Distinctive to this discourse is a clear sandwich type structure in the aperture and closure of almost identical wording, but the closure is then followed by an Exhortation paragraph as an afterthought. It is an expansion of the implications of the exhortation included in the closure.

The discourse is made up of four episodes. Episode three is of particular interest as it gives a sample of the complex paragraph embedding found in the Komba language.

Discourse B, Narrative   'The Airstrip.'

Aperture: Reinforcement Paragraph

  Text: Indentical Predicate Paragraph

    Slot 1: Independent Clause

    Slot 2: Independent Clause

  Reinforcement : Contrast Paragraph

    Contrast 1: Independent Clause

    Contrast 2: Independent Clause

Episode 1: Quote Paragraph

  Introduction : Sentence

  Quote : Alternative Paragraph
    Alternative 1: Independent Clause
    Alternative Link
Episode 2: Narrative Paragraph

  BU 1: Sentence

  BU 2: Exposition Paragraph

    Text : Sentence

    Exposition : Independent Clause

Episode 3: Narrative Paragraph

  BU 1: Sentence

  BU 2: Sentence

  BU 3: Command-Fulfillment Paragraph

    Command: Quote Paragraph

      Introduction : Sentence

      Quote: Procedural Paragraph

        Step 1: Exposition Paragraph

          Text: Independent Clause

          Exposition : Sentence

Step 2: Exposition Paragraph

    Text: Alternative   Paragraph

        Alternative 1 :   Sentence

        Alternative Link: _mo_   'or'

    Exposition: Independent Clause

Fulfillment: Condition- Result Paragraph

    Condition: Sentence

    Result: Reinforcement Paragraph

        Text: Exposition Paragraph.

            Text: Sentence

            Exposition: Condition-Result Paragraph

                Condition: Independent Clause

                Result; Independent Clause

        Reinforcement: Exposition Paragraph

            Text: Sentence

            Exposition 1: Independent Clause

            Exposition 2: Sentence

Episode 4: Condition-Result Paragraph

    Condition: Independent Clause

    Result: Independent Clause.

Closure: Exhortation Paragraph

    Basis: Identical Predicate Paragraph

        Slot 1: Independent Clause

        Slot 2: Independent Clause

    Exhortation: Sentence

Afterthought: Exhortation Paragraph

Basis: Antithetical Paragraph

Thesis: Quote Paragraph

Introduction: Sentence

Quote: Sentence

Antithesis: Independent Clause

Exhortation: Exposition Paragraph

Text: Independent Clause

Exposition : Quote Paragraph

Introduction : Sentence

Quote: Condition-Result Paragraph

Condition: Independent Clause

Result: Independent Clause

Conclusion: Independent Clause

Discourse B,   Narrative   'The Airstrip.'

Aperture: Reinforcement Paragraph

   Text: Identical Predicate Paragraph

      Slot 1:   Independent Clause

<u>Na</u> - <u>nâ</u> <u>den</u>   <u>kânok</u> <u>mân</u>   <u>dâ</u>   - <u>go</u>   - <u>man</u>.

Son - my   talk   one   neg. tell - you   - I do

      Slot 2:   Independent Clause

<u>Zor</u>   - <u>at</u>   <u>irak</u>   <u>dâ</u>   - <u>go</u> - <u>bat</u>.

That   - ref. today   tell - you - I will

    Reinforcement: Contrast Paragraph

      Contrast 1:   Independent Clause

<u>Nii</u>   <u>kabâ</u>   - <u>ŋâ</u>   <u>zir</u> - <u>at</u>   <u>den</u>   <u>zo</u>   <u>ko</u>

aircraft   clearing -its   this - ref. talk   that cont.

<u>mân</u>   <u>dâ</u>   - <u>go</u>   - <u>man</u>.

neg.   tell- you - I do

      Contrast 2:   Independent Clause

<u>Ka</u>   <u>irak</u>   <u>dâ</u>   - <u>go</u>   - <u>bat</u>.

but   today   tell - you   - I will

   'One thing I have not been telling you.   I am going to tell you that today.   I have not been telling you about this airstrip, but today I am going to tell you.'

Episode 1: Quote Paragraph

    Introduction : Sentence

<u>Topkwap - ŋâ</u>   Komba   <u>niiŋ</u>   <u>ŋâi</u>   <u>kut- ŋâ</u>

beginning - its   Komba   our   a   name- his

<u>masta</u> <u>Lae</u>   <u>zâk - ŋâ</u>   <u>gâ- i</u>   <u>ko</u>   <u>Muin</u>

mister Ray   he- Subj.   come- he hetero. comp. Muin

<u>Ununu</u>   <u>ari - a</u>   <u>zâk- ŋâ</u>   <u>yatâ</u>

Ununu   go- I hetero.   he- subj.   like that

<u>sâ - ip</u>

speak-he did

    Quote: Alternative Paragraph

      Alternative 1 : Independent Clause

<u>"Gâ - gâr - en</u>   <u>hân</u>   <u>âlipŋâ</u>   <u>ŋâi</u>   <u>ta - ap</u> ?

you - poss. - loc.   ground good   very   stay- it has

      Alternative Link

<u>Mo</u> ? "

or (not)

   'It began when a friend of us Komba people , Mr. Ray
came and I went from Muin to Ununu to see him and he
said to me , " Do you have a very good piece of land
at your place or not ? " '

Episode 2:   Narrative Paragraph

   BU 1:   Sentence

<u>Sâ   - i</u>   <u>ko</u>   <u>du   - ku   - m</u>   <u>sâ   - wan</u>

speak- he   comp. tell - him   homo.   speak - I did

   BU 2:   Exposition Paragraph

     Text: Sentence

<u>Kânok</u>   <u>ta   - ap</u>   <u>s   - andâ</u>   <u>ko</u>   <u>haŋsâ   - i</u>

one   stay - it has   speak- I hetero. comp. be morning - it

<u>hân</u>   <u>zo</u>   <u>ik   - tat.</u>

ground that see - we du. will.

     Exposition: Independent Clause

<u>Ya</u>   <u>sâ   - ip.</u>

like that speak - he did

  'He spoke like that and I told him, "There is a

piece." I spoke and then he   said, "In the

morning we two will look at that piece of land."'

Episode 3: Narrative Paragraph

   BU 1: Sentence

ze   - m   haṇsâ   - i ko   hân zi   ga

recline - homo. be morning- it comp. ground this come

Muin hân igâ   - wet.

Muin ground see it- we du. did.

   BU 2: Sentence

Ek   ma ko upaṫ   kwânâŋg - ip

see it ctd. comp. victory plant plant it - he did

   BU 3: Command- Fulfillment Paragraph

      Command : Quote   Paragraph

        Introduction: Sentence

Upat   kwânâŋgâ - m   ko sa - ip.

Victory plant plant it-homo. comp. speak- he did

       Quote: Procedural Paragraph

        Step 1: Exposition Paragraph

         Text: Independent Clause

"Sâu zi gi   - bâman.

knife this give you - I am about to

        Exposition: Sentence

Sâu   zir - aṇâ me - m nep hibuk -ṇâ

Knife this - Inst. get -homo. work grass - its

um   zi uri - na   kabâ   o - i

bamboo this cut it - you hetero. clearing be - it hetero.

batum   nep   tuu - bi.

sweet potato work make it- you will

Step 2: Exposition Paragraph

Text: Alternative Paragraph

Alternative 1: Sentence

Kabâ   o - i   gâ zombâ u - pan?

clearing be-it hetero. you aged be - you will

Alternative Link

mo

or

Alternative 2: Independent Clause

Sâu zi sombâ u - pap.

Knife this aged be - it will

Exposition; Independent Clause

Zor - en nii   kabâ - nâ   muyagi - bap ."

that - loc. aircraft clearing-its   appear - it well

Fulfillment: Condition Result Paragraph

Condition: Sentence

Sâ - m   ga   abu   kwânâŋgâ - m   ar - i

speak-homo. come victory plant   plant - homo. go -he hetero.

nâ nep zo galem sâu   me - m   ga

I   work that overseer knife get-homo.   come

pa - ndâ   sâu   zor - aŋâ   sapsuug   - i

put it- I hetero. knife that - subj. declare it - it hetero.

nep zi bagi - netâ   nii   kabâ - nâ

work this enter -they hetero. aircraft clearing-its

âsagi - ap.

appear - it has

Result: Reinforcement Paragraph

Text: Exposition Paragraph

Text: Sentence

Zor - at   ko   um   - nâ alip   o - i   nâ

that - ref. then inside- my alright be - it hetero. I

yatâ   s   - an.

like that speak - I have

Exposition: Condition-Result Paragraph

Condition: Independent Clause

Oi   nâ - ŋâ   nii   den   nâŋgâ   - m   a   buŋâ

and I - Subj. bird talk understand-homo. man   not

Result: Independent Clause

Nâ kamân   di   - ŋan   s   - an.

I   village speech- its loc. speak - I have

Reinforcement: Exposition Paragraph

Text: Sentence

zor - at   nii   kabâ - ŋâ   zi   âsagi - ap

that - ref. aircraft clearing-its this appear- it has

sâ   - m   um   - nâ âlip   u - ap.

speak - homo. inside-my alright be - it has

Exposition 1: Independent Clause

Nâ mân mum   - bat.

I   neg. die   - I will

Exposition 2:   Sentence

<u>It   - ik</u>   <u>t   -a   - yâk</u>   <u>nep</u>   <u>top</u>   <u>top</u>

like this-spec. stay-I   hetero.-lim.   work   base   base

<u>âsage   - i</u>   <u>ek   - ŋâ</u>   <u>mum   -   bat</u>.

appear - it hetero. see it- comp.   die   - I will

'We slept and in the morning we came and looked at this piece of land at Muin. We continued looking at it then he planted a victory plant and said, "I am about to give you this knife. Take this knife and cut the grass and bamboo until it is cleared and then people will make sweet potato gardens here. When you are old or when this knife is old this will become a clearing. At that time it will become an airstrip. " He spoke like that and came and planted a victory plant and went.

I was overseer of that work and brought the knife and put it here and that knife declared it, causing the people to take up the work and build the airstrip, so that it is now done. I am happy because of that and so I have spoken the story. Not being a man who knows pidgin, I have told it in the local language. So I am happy that the airstrip has come into being. I will not die yet, but rather remain as I am seeing other kinds of development occur here before I die.'

Discourse B, Narrative 'The Airstrip.'

Episode 4: Condition Result Paragraph

   Condition: Independent Clause

Muin sâu   me   - wan.

Muin knife get it ⁻ I did

   Result: Independent Clause

zo ko   nep   marin   nâ.

that then work owner   I

   'I received the knife for Muin airstrip, so then I have special rights in regard to the airstrip.'

Closure: Exhortation Paragraph

  Basis: Identical Predicate Paragraph

   Slot 1: Independent Clause

Den kânok zi   mân   dâ - qo - man.

talk one this neg. tell- you - I do

   Slot 2: Independent Clause

Irak dâ - gog - an.

today tell- you - I have

  Exhortation: Sentence

zo nâŋgâ - na   suuŋ   - ik.

that understand-you hetero. pierce it - it should

   'One thing I have not been telling you. Today I have told it to you. You should think on it to grasp its significance.'

Discourse B, Narrative   'The Airstrip.'

Afterthought: Exhortation Paragraph

  Basis: Antithetical Paragraph

    Thesis: Quote Paragraph

      Introduction: Sentence

<u>Dâran</u> <u>nep</u> <u>zi</u>   <u>bon</u> - <u>ŋâ</u>   <u>o</u> - <u>i</u>   <u>ko</u> <u>sâ</u> - <u>bi</u>.

later work this fruit-its be -it hetero, comp. speak- they will

        Quote: Sentence

<u>"Nâ</u> - <u>ŋâ</u>   <u>sa</u>   - <u>ndâ</u>   <u>muyagi</u>   - <u>ap</u>."

I - subj. speak - I hetero. appear - it has.

        Closure: Independent Clause

<u>yatâ</u>   <u>sâ</u> - <u>be</u>.

like that speak- they might

        Antithesis: Independent Clause

<u>Nep</u>   <u>zirâ</u>   <u>mari</u>   - <u>ŋâ</u>   <u>nâ</u>.

work   this   owner - its   I

    Exhortation : Exposition Paragraph

      Text: Independent Clause

<u>Den</u>   <u>zi</u>   <u>zir</u> - <u>en</u>   - <u>âk</u>   <u>mân</u>   <u>birâ</u>   - <u>ban</u>

talk   this this - loc. - lim. neg. leave it- you will

      Exposition : Quote Paragraph

        Introduction : Sentence

<u>Me</u> - <u>m</u>   <u>ai</u>   <u>kamân</u> - <u>gan</u>   <u>patâ</u> - <u>râp</u> - <u>kâ</u>

get it-homo. go   village- you loc. big   - pl.   your

<u>dâ - zâŋgo - m</u>   <u>sâ - ban</u>,

tell- them - homo. speak- you will

      Quote: Condition Result Paragraph

      Condition: Independent Clause

"<u>Zâk - ŋâ</u> <u>sâu</u> <u>me   - ip</u>.

he   - subj. knife get it - he did.

      Result: Independent Clause

<u>zorat</u>   <u>ko</u> <u>nii</u> <u>kabâŋ</u>   <u>âsagi - ap</u>.

that -ref. then aircraft clearing appear- it has

      Conclusion: Independent Clause

<u>Nii</u>   <u>kabâ - ŋâ</u> <u>zo</u> <u>zâk - ŋâ</u>   <u>Ligioŋâ</u>

aircraft clearing-its that he - subj. Ligionga

<u>sâ - i</u>   <u>âsage   - ip</u>.

speak-he hetero. appear - it did.

   'At a later time when the fruit of this airstrip
building work is seen, others might say, "I caused
the airstrip to be built." They might say that. But
I am the one. Do not forget this point. Go and tell it
to your leaders at your place. Say, "He got the knife
so the airstrip came into existence. Ligiongâ is the
one who caused that airstrip to be built."'

8.4.3

Discourse C, Procedural   'Coffee Processing.'

This is a procedural discourse made up of an aperture, five episodes outlinging the procedure and a closure. The episodes being filled by Procedural Paragraphs and Exposition Paragraphs.

Discourse C, Procedural   'Coffee Processing '

Aperture: Independent Clause

Episode 1: Exposition Paragraph

   Text: Procedural Paragraph

      Step 1:   Sentence

      Step 2:   Sentence

      Step 3:   Sentence

   Exposition; Warning Paragraph

      Unwanted Result: Condition-Result Paragraph

         Condition: Sentence

         Result: Exposition Paragraph

            Text: Sentence

            Exposition: Independent Clause

      Evasion: Sentence

Episode 2: Procedural Paragraph

   Step 1: Sentence

   Step 2: Sentence

   Step 3: Sentence

   Step 4: Sentence

   Step 5: Sentence

   Step 6: Exposition Paragraph

      Text: Sentence

      Exposition: Sentence

Episode 3: Procedural Paragraph

    Step 1: Independent Clause

    Step 2: Sentence

    Step 3: Sentence

    Step 4: Warning Paragraph

        Unwanted Result: Condition-Result Paragraph

           Condition: Sentence

           Result: Exposition Paragraph

               Text: Sentence

               Exposition: Independent Clause

        Evasion: Condition-Result Paragraph

           Condition: Sentence

           Result: Sentence

    Step 5: Contrast Paragraph

        Contrast 1: Sentence

        Contrast 2: Sentence

Episode 4: Exposition Paragraph

    Text: Independent Clause

    Exposition 1: Sentence

    Exposition 2: Sentence

Episode 5: Procedural Paragraph

    Step 1: Sentence

    Step 2: Sentence

    Step 3: Sentence

    Step 4: Exposition Paragraph

Text: Sentence

Exposition 1:   Independent Clause

Exposition 2:   Independent Clause

Step 5:   Sentence

Step 6:   Sentence

Step 7:   Sentence

Closure: Independent Clause

Discourse C Procedural. 'Coffee Processing.'

Aperture: Independent Clause

<u>Oi</u> <u>ko</u> <u>zi</u> <u>ko</u> <u>kopi</u> <u>mândâmândâli-</u> <u>ŋaŋ</u> <u>-</u> <u>ĝât</u>

and then, this then coffee crushing   - its - poss.

<u>zor</u> <u>- at</u> <u>di</u> <u>- ŋâ</u> <u>dâ</u> <u>- ɡo</u> <u>- bâman.</u>

that - ref. talk - its tell - you - I am about to.

    'And here now I am about to tell you the talk

about the crushing of coffee.'

Episode 1: Exposition Paragraph

  Text: Procedural Paragraph

    Step 1: Sentence

<u>kâm</u> <u>- ŋâ</u> <u>karâmbut</u> <u>takâ</u> <u>- m</u> <u>zâi</u> <u>- m</u> <u>- ŋâ</u>

shoot-its three   arrive-homo. ascend-homo.- comp.

<u>bihbin - âk</u> <u>kir</u> <u>- i</u> <u>kât</u> <u>ŋâi</u> <u>mi</u> <u>- men.</u>

upright-lim. stand -it hetero. stone a get - er do.

    Step 2: Sentence

<u>Nak</u> <u>pâŋâ</u> <u>me</u> <u>- m</u> <u>ko</u> <u>tâk</u> <u>dii</u> <u>- m</u> <u>ko</u> <u>kopi</u>

tree middle get-homo. comp. vine lead it-homo.comp. coffee

<u>ɡoot - ŋan</u> <u>âi</u> <u>saaɡ</u> <u>- indâ</u> <u>ko</u> <u>ɡwolantenaksa</u> <u>- m</u>

shoot-its loc. go tie it - we comp. bend over   -homo.

<u>ɡâ - i</u> <u>nebut</u> <u>- ŋâ</u> <u>kwâk</u> <u>- ŋan</u> <u>âi</u> <u>ze</u> <u>-m</u>

come-it hetero. other - its top. - its loc.go recline-homo.

<u>ko</u> <u>bon</u> <u>- ŋâ</u> <u>âlip</u> <u>yatâ</u> <u>zo</u> <u>âsaɡe</u> <u>- map.</u>

comp. fruit-its good   like that that appear - it does.

Step 3: Sentence

âsage - i   ko   sându   - m   mândâli - men .

appear - it hetero.comp. pick it-homo. crush it -we do

   Exposition: Warning Paragraph

     Unwanted Result: Condition Result Paragraph

       Condition: Sentence

Yen - âk   binbin   zâi   kin   - map,

nothing-its loc.upright ascend stand- it does

      Result:Exposition Paragraph

       Text: Sentence

Zo ko   ma   - nâ   ko   - i   ilum   - nâ

that then sunshine -subj.   strike it-it hetero.leaves- its

âmbârngâ - map.

wither   - it does

       Exposition: Independent Clause

Bon - nâ   yatik

fruit-its   like that- speac.

     Evasion: Sentence

zor   - at   op - nâ   ko   para   saag - indâ

that - ref. be -comp. comp. horizontal   tie it-we hetero.

âi   ze   - m   ko   bon   - nâ   âlip   yatâ

go   recline -homo. comp. fruit -its   good   like that

âsage   - map.

appear - it does

'When three shoots have grown up and stand upright we take a stone and take the mid section and bring a vine to the tree and tie it to the shoot so that it bends down with the weight of the rock, but the other branches are at a higher angle. This way good coffee is produced. When it is produced we pick it and crush it. If the branches just grow up straight .like that then the sun strikes it and the leaves wither, the fruit likewise. Because of that we tie them into a horizontal position and they grow and good fruit is produced.'

Episode 2:   Procedural Paragraph

  Step 1:   Sentence

Kopi sându   - m   - ŋâ   irâ   karâmbut, kimembut

coffee pick it -homo.-comp. bag   three   four

yatâ   mândâlimândâli - ŋan pâ   - indâ   kin

like that crusher   -its loc. put it-we hetero. stand

tâ - i   mândâle   - m kin   tap - men.

stay - it hetero. crush it-homo. stand stay- we do

   Step 2:   Sentence

mândâle - indâ   oto   - yân   gei   tap - map.

crush it -we hetero.trough-loc. descend stay - it does

   Step 3:   Sentence

oto   patâ patâ   tâ - i   ko   too   kândom

trough big big   stay - it hetero.comp. water first

loke - indâ   gei   - map

pour it-we hetero. descend – it does.

   Step 4:   Sentence

Saŋgon pisuk pa   - m - ŋâ   loke   - indâ

wash   all   put it-homo.- comp. pour it - we hetero.

             ar - i   ko   du   too

             go - it hetero.comp. again water

zagât   gu   - men.

two   pour in - we do

Step 5:   Sentence

<u>Guŋ   - indâ</u>   <u>ŋei</u>   <u>ko</u>   <u>sâk   -   tâŋ</u>

pour in-we hetero. descend comp. skin   - spec.

<u>buput   - âŋ</u>   <u>wandâ</u>   <u>mulun -âk</u>   <u>simbâŋ</u>   <u>pa   - men.</u>

pieces - spec. what.   carefully-lim. remove put it -we do.

Step 6:   Exposition Paragraph

Text: Sentence

<u>Pa   - m</u>   <u>ko</u>   <u>karâmbuŋâ</u>   <u>too</u>   <u>gu - m</u>   <u>ko</u>

put it - homo. comp.   third   water pour in-homo. comp.

<u>yen</u>   <u>pa   -   men.</u>

nothing put it -we do.

Exposition: Sentence

<u>Me   - m   - ŋâ</u>   <u>kamân   - ân</u>   <u>pa   - men.</u>

get it -homo. - comp. village -loc.   put it-we do

'Having picked the coffee we take three or four bags and stand them at the crusher and then we stand crushing them We crush them and the beans go down and stay in a trough. There are large troughs staying there and we pour in the first rinse water. We wash through it all thoroughly then pour out the water and pour in the second rinse water. We pour it in then carefully pick out and throw away things like pieces of skin and broken beans. Having got rid of such we pour in the third rinse water then just put it aside. We take and put it in the village.'

Episode 3: Procedural Paragraph

   Step 1: Independent Clause

<u>sâlâpku - men</u>.

count it - we do

   Step 2: Sentence

<u>Narâk - ŋâ</u> <u>karâmbut</u> <u>o - i</u>   <u>gâsu - m</u> <u>ik -   men</u>.

time - its   three   be - it hetero. hold it-homo.see it-we do

   Step 3: Sentence

<u>Sâp</u> <u>karâmbut</u> <u>zo</u>   <u>mân</u>   <u>kikerereksâ - i</u>   <u>ko</u>

time   three   that   neg.   ferment   -it hetero. comp.

<u>ekap</u>   <u>mânaŋgât</u> <u>luŋ   - indâ</u   <u>gâ - i</u>

banana leaf   cut it   carry it-we hetero. come-it hetero.

<u>ko</u>   <u>kwarâku - m</u>   <u>kusik - ŋan</u>   <u>tuu   - men</u>.

comp. cover it-homo. good   -its loc. make it-we do

    Step 4: Warning Paragraph

      Unwanted Result: Condition Result Paragraph

       Condition: Sentence

<u>Tuu   - m</u>   <u>tâ - indâ</u>   <u>ze   - m</u>   <u>ko</u>

make it-homo. stay -we hetero. recline-homo. comp.

<u>kwâk - ŋan</u> <u>mâtâp - tâŋ</u> <u>mâik</u> <u>ŋâi</u> <u>kin - map</u>

top   -its loc.opening- spec. small a   stand-it does

Result: Exposition Paragraph

Text: Sentence

Zor - en ŋâbâ ko pibâ ŋâi kopi ŋâsu - i

that - loc. from cont. wind a coffee hold it - it hetero.

ko mân alâge - map

comp. neg. rot - it does.

Exposition: Independent Clause

Um - ŋandâ ŋilik - ŋoor - âk tap - map

inside-its Subj. sap- acc. - lim. stay - it does

Evasion: Condition Result Paragraph

Condition: Sentence

Kwârâku - m kusik tuu - men.

cover it -homo. good make it-we do

Result: Sentence

zo ko kaapum - ŋandâ ŋâsu - i ko

that then breath - its subj. hold it-it hetero. comp.

kerereksâ - map.

ferments - it does

Step 5: Contrast Paragraph

Contrast 1: Sentence

Alâge - i ko sâp mamim - ŋâ zi ko

rot - it hetero. comp. time thumb - its this cont.

nen kopi saŋgon - men

we coffee wash - we do

Contrast 2:   Sentence

<u>Kopi</u> <u>doŋbep</u>   <u>patâ</u>   <u>zorâ</u> - <u>ŋâ</u>   <u>ko</u>   <u>sâp</u>

coffee much   big   that - subj. cont.   time

<u>kimembu</u> - <u>âk</u>   <u>tap</u> - <u>ŋâ</u> <u>alâge</u> - <u>i</u>   <u>ko</u>

four   - lim.   stay - comp. rot   - it hetero. comp

<u>ko</u>   <u>saŋgon</u>   - <u>men</u>.

comp. wash   - we do   .

'We take it and put it in the village. We count
the days. On the third day we feel it to see how it is.
If on the third day it has not fermented then we cut
banana leaves and carry then to the trough and cover
it over well. If   when we do it we leave a small hole
standing uncovered a wind will enter from there and take
hold of the coffee so it does not rot. It stays with its
sap inside it. So we cover it carefully and do it well,
so that its breath takes hold and it ferments.   ·
When it has rotted, on the fifth day we wash the coffee.
Much coffee rots after staying only four days, and
we wash it.'

Episode 4: Exposition Paragraph

    Text: Independent Clause

<u>Too</u> <u>saŋgon</u> <u>lokiloki - ŋâ</u> <u>ko</u> <u>kiin</u> <u>kânok</u>

water wash   pour out - its cont. foot one

<u>saŋgon</u>   <u>- men</u>.

wash it - we do

    Exposition 1: Sentence

<u>Too</u> <u>saŋgon</u> <u>loki__</u> <u>- men</u>

water wash   pour it - we do

    Exposition 2: Sentence

<u>Kiin</u> <u>kânok</u> <u>gilik - ŋâ</u> <u>sot</u> <u>kârok</u> <u>- ŋâ</u> <u>zo</u>

foot   one   sap - its and stench - its that

<u>saŋgon</u> <u>loki</u> <u>- men</u>.

wash   pour it out-we do

Episode 5: Procedural Paragraph

    Step 1: Sentence

<u>Zor</u> <u>- at</u> <u>ombo</u> <u>- ŋâ</u> <u>kuku</u> <u>- ŋan</u> <u>zor</u> <u>- en</u>

that - ref. board - its hammered - its loc. that - loc.

<u>pa</u> <u>-</u> <u>men</u>.

put it- we do

    Step 2: Sentence

<u>Zo</u> <u>ko</u> <u>kândom</u> <u>ombo</u> <u>- ŋan</u> <u>pa</u> <u>-</u> <u>men</u>, <u>zorâ - ŋâ</u>

that then first   board - its loc. put it-we do   that- Inst.

<u>me</u> <u>- m</u> <u>- ŋâ</u> <u>ma</u> <u>- yân</u> <u>mân</u> <u>pa</u> <u>- men</u>

get it- homo.-comp. sunshine-loc.   neg.   put it-we do

Step 3: Sentence

<u>Pâ</u> - <u>indâ</u>　　<u>ko</u>　<u>hilâm</u>　<u>kânok</u>　<u>tâp</u>　- <u>map</u>
put it -we hetero. comp.　day　　one　　stay　- it does

Step 4: Exposition Paragraph

Text: Sentence

<u>Zaqât</u> - <u>nan</u>　<u>zor</u> - <u>en</u>　<u>ko</u>　　<u>me</u>　　　- <u>indâ</u>
two　　- it loc. that-loc. comp. get it- we hetero.

<u>ma</u> - <u>yân</u>　<u>âi</u> - <u>map</u>.
sunshine-loc.　go　- it does

Exposition 1: Independent Clause

<u>Ma</u>　　　<u>nângâ</u> - <u>map</u>
sunshine　feel it - it does

Exposition 2: Independent Clause

<u>Ma</u>　- <u>nâ</u>　<u>ike</u>　- <u>bap</u>.
sunshine-subj. shine on it- it will

Step 5: Sentence

<u>Sâk</u> - <u>nâ</u>　<u>eq</u>　- <u>indâ</u>　<u>kikpâuk</u> <u>yatâ</u>　<u>o</u> - <u>i</u>
skin - its　see it-we hetero. split　like that be-it hetero.

<u>ko</u>　<u>du</u>　<u>me</u> - <u>indâ</u>　　<u>sânduk</u> - <u>nan</u>　<u>âi</u>　<u>tâp</u> - <u>map</u>
comp. again get it-we hetero. shade-its loc. go stay-it does

Step 6: Sentence

<u>Ma</u>　<u>eq</u> - <u>indâ</u>　<u>utuk</u> <u>o</u> - <u>i</u>　<u>ko</u>　<u>dum</u>
sunshine see it-we hetero. shaded be-it hetero.comp. again

<u>di</u> - <u>nâ</u>　<u>me</u> - <u>indâ</u>　　<u>âi</u>　<u>ma</u>　　<u>nângâ</u> - <u>map</u>.
talk -its　get it-we hetero.go sunshine feel it-it does

Step 7: Sentence

Ike   - i   me - m   purik   purik
shine on it-it hetero. get it-homo. turn   turn

  kandât   pikpik - ŋoot   melâŋ - men
back   ache - its acc. turn it- we do

'Having washed the coffee we put it on board trays
we have made. When we first put it on the boards we
do not take and put them in the sunshine. We put them
aside for a day. Then on the second day we take them
and put them in the sunshine. It feels the sun. The
sun will shine on it. If we see that the skins of the
coffee beans are splitting then we again take and put
it in the shade. When we see the sun is clouded we put
it out again and it feels the sun. The sun shines on it
and with aching backs we are continually turning the
coffee beans.'

Closure: Independent Clause

Kopi âlipŋâ âsage - map   zor - at   top - ŋâ
coffee good   appear - it does that-ref. basis - its

zo yatâ.
that like that

     'Those are the basics for producing good coffee beans.

8.4.4   Discourse D, Expositional/ Hortatory

'School Children'

This discourse is largely expositional explaining
why the children are to be corrected, but the speaker
is also appealing to the parents to give due consider-
ation to the reasons, and behave accordingly.

The discourse is made up of seventeen points,
seven filled by Condition-Result Paragraphs, six filled
by Exposition Paragraphs, two Narrative Paragraphs,
one a sentence, and an Exhortation Paragraph as the
first point.

Many of the points are almost repetitive, listing
further misdemeanors of the children, for which they
are to be corrected.

Discourse D, Expository/Hortatory.   'School Children'

Point 1: Exhortation Paragraph
    Basis: Dialogue Paragraph
        Speech 1: Quote Paragraph
            Introduction : Sentence
            Quote: Alternative Paragraph
                Alternative 1: Independent Clause
                Alternative Link: <u>mo</u> 'or'
                Alternative 2: <u>bunâ</u> 'not'
        Speech 2: Independent Clause
    Exhortation: Sentence

Point 2: Exposition Paragraph
    Text: Exhortation Paragraph
        Basis: Sentence
        Exhortation : Sentence
    Exposition: Exposition Paragraph
        Text: Exposition Paragraph
            Text: Sentence
            Exposition:
        Exposition 1: Independent Clause
        Exposition 2: Sentence
        Exposition 3: Independent Clause

Point 3: Condition-Result Paragraph
    Periphery: Indentification
    Condition: Exposition Paragraph
        Text: Question Answer Paragraph
            Question: Independent Clause
            Answer: Independent Clause
        Exposition: Independent Clause
    Result: Independent Clause

Point 4:　Condition-Result Paragraph
　Condition:　Sentence
　Result:　Independent Clause
Point 5:　Condition-Result Paragraphs
　Condition:　Sentence
　Result:　Exposition Paragraph
　　Text:　Independent Clause
　　Exposition:　Independent Clause
Point 6:　Condition-Result Paragraph
　Condition:　Exposition Paragraph
　　Text:　Sentence
　　Exposition:　Sentence
　Result:　Independent Clause
Point 7:　Condition-Result Paragraph
　Condition:　Independent Clause
　Result:　Independent Clause
Point 8:　Exposition Paragraph
　Text:　Independent Clause
　Exposition:　Condition-Result Paragraph
　　Condition:　Exposition Paragraph
　　　Text:　Sentence
　　　Exposition:　Independent Clause
　　Result:　Independent Clause
Point 9:　Exposition Paragraph
　Text:　Independent Clause
　Exposition:　Narrative Paragraph
　　BU 1:　Sentence
　　BU 2:　Independent Clause
Point 10:　Condition-Result Paragraph
　Condition:　Exposition Paragraph
　　Text:　Condition-Result Paragraph
　　　Condition:　Sentence
　　　Result:　Sentence

354

```
           Exposition:  Sentence
         Result:  Independent Clause
Point 11:  Exposition Paragraph
         Text:  Sentence
         Exposition:  Independent Clause
Point 12:  Condition-Result Paragraph
         Condition:  Narrative Paragraph
             BU 1:  Sentence
             BU 2:  Sentence
             BU 3:  Independent Clause
         Result:  Independent Clause
Point 13:  Narrative Paragraph
         BU 1:  Sentence
         BU 2:  Sentence
Point 14:  Narrative Paragraph
         BU 1:  Sentence
         BU 2:  Exposition Paragraph
             Text:  Independent Clause
             Exposition:  Sentence
Point 15:  Sentence
Point 16:  Exposition Paragraph
         Periphery : bâi  'enough of that'
         Text:  Independent Clause
         Exposition 1:  Condition-Result Paragraph
             Condition:  Independent Clause
             Result:  Independent Clause
         Exposition 2:  Independent Clause
Point 17:  Exposition Paragraph
         Text:  Exposition Paragraph
             Text:  Sentence
             Exposition:  Âbabibi  'dumb'
         Exposition:  Exposition Paragraph
             Text:  Sentence
             Exposition:  Independent Clause
```

Discourse D, Expository/Hortatory 'School Children'

Point 1: Exhortation Paragraph
  Basis: Dialogue Paragraph
    Speech 1: Quote Paragraph
      Introduction: Sentence

A ambân katep ekap namâ – ŋan   mân

male female child paper house – its loc. neg.

zai – m – ŋâ   nâŋgâ   – m –ŋâ mâsikâ–ziŋgâ–nek.

ascend-homo.-comp. understand-homo.-comp. ask   -them-you should

      Quote: Alternative Paragraph

        Alternative 1: Independent Clause

Ekap namâ – ŋan zari – at?

paper house –its loc. ascend-you have

        Alternative Link

mo

or

        Alternative 2: buŋâ

buŋâ

not

      Speech 2: Independent Clause

"O ekap namâ – ŋan   mân zari – an."

oh   paper house –its loc. neg. ascend-I have

    Exhortation: Sentence

Yatâ   o –i ko sâŋgoŋu – ne abure – m gâ-bap.

like that be-it comp. send him-you hetero. turn-homo.come-he wil

'Understanding that the boys and girls have wagged school, you should ask them, "Have you been to school or not?" and if he/she says, "I have not been to school," then send him/her back.'

Point 2: Exposition Paragraph
   Text: Exhortation Paragraph
    Basis: Sentence

Oi	ibâ	mam	gâ - gâr - en	ir - in	yat - ik
and	father	mother	you-poss. -loc.	bag -loc.	like that-spec.

mo	kopi	ga	zi - ap.
or	doffee	come	recline-it has

    Exhortation: Sentence

Zo	ko	laŋ	sâŋgon-zâŋgo-ne	ga - nek.
that	then	regardless	send-them -you	hetero.come-they should.

    Exposition: Exposition Paragraph
     Text: Exposition Paragraph
     Text: Sentence

Ekap	namâ	galem	zagât	zor - âŋ	yatâ
paper	house	overseer	two	that - Subj.	like that

sâ - m	dât - no - wet.
speak-homo.	tell -me - they did

Exposition: Sentence

<u>Ekap</u> <u>kwâkâ</u> <u>- ne</u>   <u>ko</u>   <u>kwâlâ</u> <u>- bi.</u>

paper teach it-they hetero.comp. buy it-they will

      Exposition 1:   Independent Clause

<u>Zeŋ</u> <u>-ŋât</u> <u>ko</u>   <u>zi</u>   <u>zari</u> <u>- an.</u>

they -poss cont. this ascend-I have

      Exposition 2:   Sentence

<u>Zo</u>   <u>zâi</u> <u>eks</u>   <u>- an</u>

this ascend see it-I have

      Exposition 3:   Independent Clause

<u>Muka</u>   <u>zi</u>   <u>ekap</u>   <u>namâ</u> <u>- ŋan</u>   <u>ziŋgit</u>   <u>âi-wen -ân</u>

yesterday this paper house -its loc. see them go-we did-loc.

<u>zaŋât</u> <u>zik</u> <u>- ŋâ</u>   <u>kwâkâ</u>   <u>- wet.</u>

two   they two-subj. teach it - they did

   'And you fathers and mothers, if you have cash in your bag or coffee ready to sell, then you should send them. The two school teachers told me like that. If they teach them from books you will pay them. For you I went up here. I went up and saw it. Yesterday when I went up to see them at the school, those two taught them.'

Point 3:   Condition- Result Paragraph

   Periphery: Introduction

<u>Nombaŋgu</u>   <u>Ebam</u>   <u>sot</u>   <u>Materane</u>.

Nombanggu   Ebam   and   Materane

   Condition: Exposition Paragraph

      Text: Question-Answer Paragraph

      Question: Independent Clause

<u>Materane</u>   <u>a</u>   <u>kut</u> – <u>ŋâ</u>   <u>palâk</u>   – <u>ŋan</u>   <u>zirâ</u>

Materane man   name –his   inside thigh-loc.   this

<u>wan</u> – <u>ŋand</u> – <u>ik</u>   <u>tuuŋ</u>   – <u>ip</u>.

what -Inst.   – spec. make it- he did

      Answer: Independent Clause

<u>Zirâ</u>   <u>dâgap</u> –   <u>ŋâ</u>   <u>tuuŋ</u>   – <u>ip</u>.

this   stinging tree-its   made it-he did

      Exposition: Independent Clause

<u>Balâk</u>   – <u>ŋan</u>   <u>tiŋtaŋs</u>   – <u>ap</u>.

Inside thigh-his loc. blister- it has

   Result: Independent Clause

<u>Zor</u>   – <u>at</u>   <u>op</u> <u>kubik</u> – <u>ziŋâ</u> – <u>namen</u>.

that – ref. be correct-them   –we are about to

      'Now about Nombangu, Ebam and Materane. Materane
did with whatever to that boy named on the inside of
his thigh here. Here he rubbed him with the irritating
sap of the Dagap tree. His skin inside his thigh has
blistered. That is why we will Correct them.'

Point 4: Condition-Result Paragraph

    Condition: Sentence

<u>Banepe</u> <u>Zerinane - ĝât</u> <u>kuruk</u> <u>keet - ŋâ</u>   <u>mun   - ŋet</u>

Banepe Zerinane's   fowl   egg   - its   younger brother-his_{acc}

<u>hilâm</u>   <u>kwot -ŋan</u> <u>ze   - m</u> <u>ne   - m</u>

day   midst -its loc. recline-homo.eat it-homo.

<u>nâŋg   - abot.</u>

complete-they have

    Result: Independent Clause

<u>Zor - at</u>   <u>kubik - ziŋĝâ - namen</u>

that - ref. correct-them   - we are about to

     'Banepe took the eggs from Zerinane's fowls and

with his younger brother, ate them all up in broad

daylight. That is why we are about to correct them.'

Point 5: Condition-Result Paragraph

    Condition: Sentence

<u>Banepe</u> <u>ibâ - ŋâ</u> <u>Sambuyoŋ</u> <u>mit</u> <u>kwâla   - m</u>

Banepe father-his Sambuyeng meat buy it   - homo

<u>ga - m</u> <u>pâ   - i</u>   <u>ko</u>   <u>me - m</u>   <u>âi</u> <u>Gwareŋ</u>

come - homo. put it-he hetero.comp. get -homo. go Gwareng

<u>tik</u>   <u>ne   - ip.</u>

secretly eat it-he did

Result: Exposition Paragraph

Text: Independent Clause

Zor - at kubik - nat.

that - ref. correct him- we will.

Exposition: Independent Clause

kubik - ziŋâ - namen

correct - them - we are about to

'Banepe's Uncle Sambuyong bought a can of meat
and brought and put it. Then Banepe took it to Gwareng
and secretly ate it. That is why we will correct him.
We are about to correct them.'

Point 6: Condition-Result Paragraph

Condition: Exposition Paragraph

Text: Sentence

Banepe Mibanu kopi ko - m pâ - i ko

Banepe Mibanu coffee strike-homo.put it-he hetero. comp.

Me - m âi tiɡ - âk mând - ip

get -homo. go secretly - lim. hang up - he did

Exposition: Sentence

Mând - i ta - ap

hang up -he hetero. stay- it has

Zor - at kubik - ziŋâ - namen.

that - ref. correct- them - we are about to

'Mibanu had processed some coffee and left it then
Banepe took it and secretly hung it on the scales to
be sold. He hung it up and it is there. We are
about to correct them for that.'

Point 7: Condition-Result Paragraph

  Condition: Independent Clause

Zâk - ŋâ   mâtak   - ŋâ   ziŋ   -   ap
He - subj. combination-its give them- he has

   Result: Independent Clause

Zor - at ko pisuk patâ zâŋo   -   namen.
that - ref.then all   big   strike them-we are about to

    'He gave them the combined amount. That is why
we are about to beat them.'

Point 8: Exposition Paragraph

  Text: Independent Clause

Ibâ   mamâ - râp - ziŋâ   nâŋgâ - nek
father mother- pl. -their   understand - you should

   Exposition: Condition- Result Paragraph

    Condition: Exposition Paragraph

     Text: Sentence

Ekap namâ - ŋan bage - m ga ge - m ko
paper house -its loc. enter-homo. come descend-homo. comp.

zen sot mân ândi - e.
you with neg. live - they have

Exposition: Independent Clause

<u>Laŋ ândi - e.</u>

regardless live - they have

Result: Independent Clause

<u>Zor - at irak zi kubik - ziŋgâ - namen</u>

that - ref today this correct- them - we are about to

'You fathers and mothers should understand this.
They go to school and then come out of school and are
not with you. They are doing things in disregard of
what is right. For that reason now, today we are
about to correct them.

Point 9: Exposition Paragraph

Text: Independent Clause

<u>Ibâ mamâ - râp - ziŋ nâŋgâ - nek</u>

father mother-pl. - their understand - you should

Exposition: Narrative Paragraph

BU 1: Sentence

<u>Ekap namâ - ŋan zâi - m ge - m âi zen</u>

paper house - its loc ascend-homo. descend - homo go you

<u>ziŋgits - e.</u>

see you - they have

BU 2: Independent Clause

<u>Oi ko nâmbut - ŋâ yen ândi - e</u>

and then some - its nothing live - they have

You   fathers and mothers should understand this. Some of them come and see you after coming out of school, but others do not and are without supervision.'

Point 10: Condition-Result Paragraph

   Condition: Exposition Paragraph

      Text: Condition- Result Paragraph

         Condition: Sentence

<u>Ibâ</u>   <u>mamâ - râp - ziŋ - aŋgât</u>   <u>aŋtatsâ -m</u>   <u>ma</u>
father mother-pl. - their- poss.   disregard-homo.   ctd.

<u>kinz   - e.</u>
stand - they have

         Resuit: Sentence

<u>Zor - at</u> <u>too - gât</u> <u>sâ - ne</u>   <u>kwâkâm</u> <u>ma</u>
that - ref. water-ben. speak- you hetero. reject ctd.

<u>kinz - e.</u>
stand - they have

         Exposition: Sentence

<u>Den</u>   <u>mot</u> <u>sâ   - netâ</u>   <u>sâṛ - ân</u> <u>lulu</u>   <u>mân</u>
talk   etc. speak -you hetero. teeth -loc. lifting   neg.

<u>op</u>   <u>ândi   - e.</u>
be   live - they have

   Result: Independence Clause

<u>zor - at</u> <u>op</u> <u>ko</u> <u>irak</u> <u>kubik- ziŋgâ - namen.</u>
that - ref be comp. today   correct-them - we are about to

'These children are always disregarding their
fathers and mothers. So when you tell them to fetch
water they refuse. You give them any kind of instructions
and they fail to obey your words. So it is for that, that
today we are about to correct them.'

Point 11: Exposition Paragraph

    Text: Sentence

<u>A</u>   <u>amban</u>   <u>zâŋo</u> <u>- netâ</u>   <u>ko</u> <u>ibâ</u>   <u>mamâ</u>   <u>-ŋâ</u>
male female strike them-they hetero.comp. father mother-his

<u>den</u> <u>laŋ</u>   <u>sâsâ</u>   <u>zo</u>   <u>ko</u>   <u>buŋâ</u>
talk regardless speech that cont. not

    Exposition: Independent Clause

<u>yen</u> <u>- âk</u>   <u>zim</u> <u>- bi</u>.
nothing- lim. recline - you will

     'It is not for you fathers and mothers to object
regardless of the facts, when we beat the boys and
girls. You will not do or say anything.'

Point 12: Condition-Result Paragraph

    Condition: Narrative Paragraph

      BU 1: Sentence

<u>Sirikebe</u>   <u>- gât</u> <u>kopi</u> <u>namâ</u> <u>gwendu</u> <u>- yân</u>   <u>tembu</u>
Sirikebe - poss. coffee house porch - loc. rack

patâ   alat   âi   kwâlâ - m   nang   - e.   .
big   carry go   buy   - homo. complete - they have

    BU 2:   Sentence

Yatâ   zo   mo   zo   eks   - a   manâ   manâ
like that that or   that see it- I   hetero. ctd. ctd.

ko   a   ambân   katep   zinâ   kut   kinkin
comp. male female child   they-subj. name   various

donbep   op   gulipku   - e
many   be   pilfer it - they have

    BU 3:   Independent Clause

Ekap   namâ   a   ambân   katep   zinâ
paper   house male female   child   they Subj.

    Result: Independent Clause

zor   - at   irak   kubik - zingâ - nat
that - ref. today correct- them   - we will.

'Sirikebe had a large tray of coffee on the
porch of his coffee house. They carried it away and
sold it all. There is this and that,   many
kinds of things that I have seen that the girls
and boys have pilfered/wasted. It is these school
boys and girls who have done it. That is why today
we will correct them,'

Point 13: Narrative Paragraph

    BU 1: Sentence

Ziŋâ   dum   op   gulipku   - netâ   ko

They sing. again be pilfer it- they hetero. comp.

min - ziŋâ - m   ko   kaunseli   ziŋâ   - nat .

get - them - homo. comp. council   give them-we will

BU 2: Sentence

ziŋ   -   indâ   ko   min - ziŋâ - m   kubik -ziŋâ -bi.

give them-we hetero. comp. get-them - homo. correct-them-they will

    'If they again do this kind of thing we will take

them   and put them in the hands of the Council.

And the Council will take and correct them.'

Point 14: Narrative Paragraph

BU 1: Sentence

Oi Tewar - ân gei - m - ŋâ   den top top

and spring-loc. descend-homo- comp. talk base base

sâlapku - m ândi - e.

read it - homo. live - they have

    BU 2: Exposition Paragraph

      Text: Independent Clause

Ekap ziŋ - an - âk kulemgu - m ândi - e.

paper they -loc. - lim. write it - homo. live -they have

Exposition: Sentence

<u>Ekap</u> <u>namaŋ – âk</u> <u>kulemgu – m</u> <u>aŋgâ   – m</u> <u>t – e.</u>

paper house – lim. write it-homo. exchange-homo. stay-they have

'And they go down to the spring and read all kinds

of messages. They are writing messages themselves.

In school they are writing messages and exchanging them.'

Point 15: Sentence

<u>A</u> <u>kut – ziŋâ</u> <u>yatâ</u> <u>zo</u> <u>pisuk</u> <u>patâ</u>

male name-their like that that all   big

<u>kubik – ziŋâ – nat – kât</u> <u>min – ziŋ – en.</u>

correct- them – we will – ben. get – them – we have

'The boys named, we have gathered all of them

for us to correct them.'

Point 16: Exposition Paragraph

    Periphery: <u>Bâi</u>

<u>Bâi</u>

Enough

    Text: Independent Clause

<u>Nâŋâ   – nek</u>

Understood- you should

    Exposition 1: Condition-Result Paragraph

       Condition: Independent Clause

<u>Neŋ – gâr – en</u> <u>kânok</u> <u>ta – ap.</u>

Us – poss.-loc. one   stay – he has

Result: Independent Clause

<u>Zor - at</u>   <u>ko</u>   <u>yatâ</u>   <u>kubik - ziŋgâ   - nat</u>

that - ref. then like that   correct- them   - we will

   Exposition 2:   Independent Clause

<u>Ekap</u> <u>namâŋ - an</u> <u>galem</u>   <u>kwâkâm - ziŋgâziŋgâŋ</u>

paper house - loc. overseer teacher of them

<u>zagât</u>   <u>ta - abot.</u>

two   stay - they du. have

     'Enough of that. You should understand, that one

of them is here with us, so we will correct them like

that. Two more teachers are up at the school.'

Point 17; Exposition Paragraph

   Text: Exposition Paragraph

      Text : Sentence

<u>Gâ - itâ</u>   <u>ko</u>   <u>naɾâk</u> <u>zor - en</u> <u>ibâ</u>   <u>mam</u>

come- they du. hetero. comp. time that-loc. father mother

<u>ziŋâ</u>   <u>a</u>   <u>ambân</u>   <u>katep</u>   <u>zeŋ - gât</u>   <u>mân</u>

you subj. male female   child   them - ben.   neg.

<u>nâŋgâ   -   we.</u>

understand- you did

      Exposition: <u>Âbabibi</u>
                      ̃

<u>Âbabibi.</u>
 ̃
dumb

Exposition: Exposition Paragraph

Text: Sentence

Ibâ	mam	zen	um	sot	kârâp	too
father	mother	you	bamboo	fuel and	firewood	water

sot	munzara	ilum	-	nâ	kembi	qwapqwap
and	munzara	leaf	-	its	sweet potato	scrappy pieces

mân	me	- m	ga	pindâ	-	we.
neg.	get	- homo.	come	give him	-	you did

Exposition: Independent Clause

kwâkâm	- zingâzingâŋ	ibâ	- ziŋâ	mân	pindâ	- we
teacher	of them	father	-their	neg.	give him-	you did

zor	- âŋ	zen	- gât	nâŋg	- i	mân	dâp
that	- subj.	you	- ben.	think-	he	hetero. neg.	fit

u	- ap.
be	- it has

'At the time when those two came you fathers and mothers did not consider your boys and girls. You were dumb. You fathers and mothers did not bring bamboo fuel or firewood or carry water or even bring Munzara leaves or scrappy sweet potato and give it to the teacher. That teacher of your children whom you didn't give anything, he has a poor opinion of you people.'

8.4.5 Discourse E, Epistolary 'Village News'

'This discourse, typical of letters, is a collection
of lar^gely unrelated topics, news, requests and enquiries,
which . are not closely connected. The discourse is
made up of nine points. Three filled by Sentences,
three by Narrative Paragraphs, one by an Independent
Clause, and the remaining two points being exhortations,
are filled by a Condition-Result Paragraph and an
Exhortation Paragraph.

Discourse E, Epistolory   'Village News.'

```
 Aperture:   Address & Narrative Paragraph
    BU 1:   Independent Clause
    BU 2:   Independent Clause
 Point 1:   Independent Clause
 Point 2:   Sentence
 Point 3:   Sentence
 Point 4:   Condition-Result Paragraph
    Periphery:   Narrative Paragraph
       BU 1:   Sentence
       BU 2:   Contrast Paragraph
          Contrast 1:   Independent Clause
          Contrast 2:   Independent Clause
    Condition:   Quote Paragraph
       Introduction:   Sentence
       Quote:   Exhortation Paragraph
          Basis:   Independent Clause
          Exhortation:   Alternative Paragraph
             Alternative 1:   Sentence
             Alternative Link:   mo   'or'
    Result:   Condition-Result Paragraph
       Condition:   Independent Clause
       Result:   Sentence
    Conclusion:   Sentence
 Point 5:   Narrative Paragraph
    BU 1:   Independent Clause
    BU 2:   Independent Clause
    BU 3:   Independent Clause
 Point 6:   Narrative Paragraph
    BU 1:   Sentence
```

BU 2:   Alternative Paragraph

  Alternative 1:   Sentence

  Alternative Link: <u>mo</u> 'or'

  Alternative 2:   Sentence

BU 3:   Sentence

Point 7:   Narrative Paragraph

  BU 1:   Exhortation Paragraph

    Basis: Sentence

    Exhortation: Sentence

  BU 2:   Independent Clause

  BU 3:   Sentence

Point 8:   Exhortation Paragraph

  Basis: Independent Clause

  Exhortation: Alternative Paragraph

    Alternative 1:   Sentence

    Alternative link: <u>mo</u> 'or'

Point 9:   Sentence

Closure: Reinforcement Paragraph

  Text: Sentence

  Reinforcement: Independent Clause

Finis: formula

Discourse E, Epistolary 'Village News'

Aperture: Address & Narrative Paragraph

   BU 1: Independent Clause

Ơ	buku - nâ,	ekap	pâ - in	zo	muyage - wan
Oh	cousin -my,	paper	put it-you did	that	find it-I did

   BU 2: Independent Clause

Oi̱	um	âlep	patâ	nâŋg - an.
and	inside	good	big	feel - I have

    'I received that letter that you sent, and I felt
very happy.'

Stage : Sentence

Oi̱	zi	kamân - gât	den	g̱iŋi	s - a	nâŋgâ -nek.
and	this	village-poss	talk	of	speak - I	hetero.understand- you should

    'And here I will speak village news and you listen
to it.'

Point 1: Independent Clause

Muin	balo	ekap	namâŋ	zor - at	namâ	mâiᵏ
Muin	plateau	paper	house that	- ref.	house	small

ŋâi	ekap	pâ - ne	gâ - i	me - m
a	paper	put it-they hetero.	come-it hetero.	get it-homo.

pâ - nat	zor - at	namâ	tuu - m	nâŋgâ - wen
put it-we will	that-ref.	house	make it-homo.	complete it-we have

'We have completed building a small building at
Muin Plateau School for storing the books and papers
that they will send.'

Point 2:   Sentence

Oi   kare   mâtap   zo   ko   mân   tuu   -   m
and car   road   that cont. neg. make it-homo.

yen   ândi   - en.
nothing live - we have

'And about the road, we have not been working
making the vehicle road, but just living.'

Point 3:   Sentence

Muin   nii   kabâŋ   zo   nii   patâ   ziŋâ
Muin aircraft clearing that aircraft big they subj.

ge   - m   pa - m   ma   kinz   -   e.
descend -homo. put- homo. ctd. stand - they have

'Large planes are frequently landing on Muin
Airstrip.'

Point 4:   Condition- Result Paragraph

   Periphery: Narrative Paragraph

      BU I.:   Sentence

Oi· net   ga   -   wet   zo   ko   neb - ân - âk
and we du. come - we du.did that then work - loc.-lim.

tap ma   kinz   -   et.
stay ctd. stand - we du. have

BU 2: Contrast Paragraph

Contrast 1: Independent Clause

Koṗi ṅâi mân sându - et.

coffee a neg. pick it - we du. have

Contrast 2: Independent Clause

Oi Kaunsola takes zo ko mârum Erendeṇan g - e.

and Council tax that cont. already Erendengan *come*-they have

Condition: Quote Paragraph

Introduction: Sentence

Oi net kat ṅâi mân tâ - i ko itâ

and we du. cash a neg. stay-it hetero. comp. like this

nâṇga - et.

understand- we du. have

Quote: Exhortation Paragraph

Basis: Independent Clause

"Net kât buṇâ.

We du. cash without

Exhortation: Alternative Paragraph

Alternative 1: Sentence

Gât ko âlip kât ṅâi pâ - na gâ - ḅap.

so then alright cash a put it-you hetero. come-it will

Alternative Link

Mo?

or (not)

Result: Condition-Result Paragraph

Condition: Independent Clause

Net   kât   mân   pân   -   dat.

We du. cash   neg.   put it - we du.

Result: Sentence

Zo   ko   kalabus   ŋei   -   m   nep   zi   birâ   -bet.

that then prison   descend - homo. work this quit it- lest we du.

Conclusion: Sentence.

Yatâ   nâŋâ   - m   ekap   zi   kwat - ŋiŋ - et.

like that understand-homo. paper this write- you - we du. have

'About we two coming back. We came and have been
working consistently since then. We have not even
stopped to pick any coffee. And now the council tax
collectors have already come as close as Erendengan.
And we two having no cash thought like this, "We are
without cash. So then would it be alright for you to
send some cash, or not?"
If we two do not pay our tax then we might have to leave
this work and go to prison. Thinking like that we have
written you this letter.'

Point 5:   Narrative Paragraph

   BU 1:   Independent Clause

Muin   mirâ   âlip   kwâkâ - wan.

Muin   house   good open   - I did

   BU 2:   Independent Clause

Oi   ekap ilum   kulemgu - m   t   - et.

And paper leaf write   - homo. stay- we du. have

   BU 3:   Independent Clause

Oi   net   âlip   ândi - et.

And we du. alright live - we have

   'I was able to unlock the house in Muin Village.
And we are now using those sheets of paper for
writing on. We are both alright.'

Point 6:   Narrative Paragraph

   BU 1:   Sentence

Ekap me - m   gi - wet zo   ko   nâmbut - nâ

paper get - homo. descend- we did   that cont. some - its

mi - ne   ko   43   ko   yen   ta - ap.

get-they hetero. comp. 43 cont. nothing   stay - it has

   BU 2:   Alternative Paragraph

     Alternative 1:   Sentence

Toren - nâ zi aksik me - m   nangâ - ne

part - its this all get - homo. complete- they hetero.

ko kât pâ - itâ   gâ - bap.

comp. cash   put it-we du. hetero.   come - it will

Alternative Link·

<u>mo</u>

or·

Alternative 2:   Sentence

<u>Pâ   - itâ</u>   <u>tâ - i</u>   <u>gâ - na</u>

put it-we du. hetero. stay-it hetero. come-you hetero.

<u>gi   - rat?</u>

give you - we will

   BU 3:   Sentence

<u>Zor - at</u> <u>ekap</u> <u>pâ   - na</u>   <u>gâ   - i</u>

that - ref. paper put it-you hetero. come - it hetero.

<u>ik   - tâ.</u>

see it -we du. should

    'Now about those books. People have bought some
but 43 remain unsold. When they finish buying the
remainder will we send the cash? Or should we put it
aside and give it to you when you come? Send us a
letter about that so we will know.'

Point 7:   Narrative Paragraph

   BU 1:   Exhortation Paragraph

      Basis: Sentence

<u>Miroto</u> <u>sot</u> <u>net</u> <u>Tomate</u> <u>sot</u> <u>kudere</u> <u>Derim</u>   <u>gola</u>

Miroto and we du. Tomatoes and oranges Derim european

<u>ta - ap</u> <u>zâ - kâr - en</u> <u>pâ   - itâ</u>   <u>ga - ap.</u>

stay-he has him-poss.-loc. put it-we du.hetero. come-it has

Exhortation: Sentence

<u>Zo</u>   <u>muyagi - at</u>   <u>o - i</u>   <u>ko</u>   <u>ekap</u>

that find it -you have be-it hetero. comp. paper

<u>pâ   - na</u>   <u>gâ - i</u>   <u>ik   - pâ.</u>

put it-you hetero. come-it hetero. see it- I should

BU 2:   Independent Clause

<u>Yuli</u>   <u>27</u>   <u>Ununu</u>   <u>gâbâ</u>   <u>Derim</u>   <u>gei   - wet.</u>

July   27   Ununu   from   Derim   descend - we du. did

BU 3:   Sentence

<u>Gei</u>   <u>ekap</u>   <u>zo</u>   <u>pindâ   - m</u>   <u>ko</u>   <u>âbure   - m</u>

descend paper that give him-homo. comp. turn - homo.

<u>Ununu</u>   <u>gâ   - wet.</u>

Ununu   come - we du. did

'Miroto and I, we two took tomatoes and oranges to
the european at Derim village and sent them and they
have come to you. If you have received th﹏em then
send a letter to let me know. We went from Ununu to
Derim on 27th of July. We went down there and gave
him a letter and returned to Ununu village.

Point 8: Exhortation Paragraph

   Basis: Independent Clause

<u>Buku - nâ</u>   <u>narâ - kât</u>   <u>tâk - nâ</u>   <u>bâlin</u>   <u>u   - ap.</u>

cousin-my   time   - poss. vine - its out of order be-it has

Exhortation: Alternative Paragraph

     Alternative 1:   Sentence

âlip   ŋâi   pâ   - ma   ŋâ   - bap

alright a   put it-you   come - it will

     Alternative Link

Mo?

or (not)

   'My cousin, my watch band is out of order.   Would
it be alright or not, for you to send me one?'

Point 9:   Sentence

Ekap   zi   ek   ko   kektâ   hâu   - ŋâ

paper this see it comp. quickly replacement - its

pâ   - na   ŋâ   - i   ik   - pâ.

put it-you hetero.   come - it hetero.   see it - I should

   'When you get this letter quickly send an answering
letter to me as I want to hear from you.'

Closure: Reinforcement Paragraph

   Text: Sentence

Ibâ   pâtâ -niŋâ   Anutu - ŋâ   galem   ot - ziŋâ - m

father big - our   God   - subj. overseer. be - to you-homo,

net   yat - ik   galem   ot - nik   - ik.

us du. like that-spec. overseer be-to us du.- he should

Reinforcement: Independent Clause

<u>Zo</u>   <u>perâknak</u>

that   true

    'Our great father, God watch over you and likewise watch over us two. Amen.'

Finis: Formula

<u>Nâ</u> <u>zengât</u>   <u>buku</u>   <u>Henan</u>.

I   you-poss. cousin Henang.

    'I am your cousin, Henang.'

9.0   BIBLIOGRAPHY

McₑElhanon, Kenneth, Selepet Grammar, from Root to Phrase,
     Pacific Linguistics, Series B-21, ANU Canberra, 1972.

Scott, Graham, Higher Levels of Fore Grammar,
     Pacific Linguistics, Series B-23, ANU Cahberra, 1973.

West, Dorothy, Wojokeso Sentence, Paragraph and Discourse
     Analysis, Pacific Linguistics, Series B-28 ANU
     Canberra 1973.

Discourse Text Authors

Discourse	A	'Man at Sea'	Kitanuwe Ninzot
Discourse	B	'The Airstrip'	Ligionga Semba
Discourse	C	'Coffee Processing'	Tiriu Gibeong
Discourse	D	'School Children'	Itoreba Leogena
Discourse	E	'Village News'	Hanang Mulat